

ARABIC and ENGLISH IDIOM

CONVERSATIONAL and LITERARY.


BERKELEY
LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF
CALIFORNIA

ARABIC AND ENGLISH IDIOM
CONVERSATIONAL AND LITERARY.

A COMPANION WORK TO

"A GRAMMAR OF THE ARABIC LANGUAGE."

BY

THE REV. R. STERLING, M.A., M.B., HON. CANON,

ST. GEORGE'S COLLEGIATE CHURCH,

JERUSALEM.

THIS WORK IS DEDICATED TO

WILLIAM WATSON, ESQ.,

JESMOND,

NEWCASTLE-ON-TYNE.

(A FRIEND OF MISSIONS).

PREFACE.

This work is intended to serve as a companion to my Grammar of the Arabic Language and aims at exhibiting the principles and structure of the language by a carefully chosen series of examples.

The great object throughout the work has been to make it an easy and progressive introduction to the idiomatic forms of the language.

The plan followed has been to work up from the elementary constructions to the complete sentence, and then to treat of the various kinds of sentences in their grammatical order.

The scope of the work, however, is such as to give it a much wider sphere of usefulness than consists in the mere enunciation and elucidation of grammatical rules.

The language used throughout the book is that in every day use in conversation, in newspapers, and in standard works ; moreover the sentences and expressions are to a very large extent of a conversational nature.

The great difficulty of the Arabic language lies in its idiom and to this special attention has been given throughout the preparation of the work. No more common source of error exists than that arising from lack of adequate knowledge of the idiom. The rules of accidence and the laws of syntax may be accurately observed in the translation of a sentence and yet the sentence may be quite meaningless. It is for this reason that I have adopted the method of giving the English and Arabic side by side with their equivalents in meaning rather than literal translations. I am not aware of any standard work on the language in which this system has been followed so closely.

The copious examples which are given in Part First serve a two-fold purpose; they familiarize the beginner with the commoner constructions and at the same time give him a vocabulary in a useful form. I make bold to state that the student who works his way carefully and systematically through the examples and exercises of this part of the work will lay a foundation of grammatical knowledge firm and strong; the language will become increasingly interesting to him, and he will pursue his studies with zest and zeal. My experience as a teacher and examiner in Arabic has taught me that the success of a student invariably depends upon the thoroughness of his knowledge of this part of the grammar.

The value of such a knowledge is seen particularly in the chapter which deals with the noun and adjective. The student who has mastered the etymology has learned the system by which he can form nouns and adjectives at will and trace the origin of almost all the words in the language. This leads me to state the great advantage that accrues from learning the meanings of verbal roots over those of nouns.

Part Second deals with the complete sentence, Simple and Verbal. The frequent absence of the verb in the simple sentence, and the variety of forms which this sentence may assume, are not a little perplexing. The chapter contains many Arabic proverbs and not a few of the sentences are striking examples of idiomatic Arabic. The Verbal Sentences embrace a wide variety of topics and are in like manner arranged according to the special rules of grammar which they illustrate. A cursory glance will show that the examples given have a very definite object, and that they are, in fact, typical of almost every variety of expression in common use; whilst a careful study of them in the light of their translations

will reveal the innumerable points of difference that obtain in the mode of expression between the two languages. The student who makes an honest attempt at acquiring the language will find no more profitable method than the committal of many of those examples to memory. He will thus imbibe the structure and idiom of the language and have at hand a stock of phrases from which to form others. The Arabic mode of thought and expression differs so widely from our own that long and close study of the language alone will familiarize the student with it, as grammar does not teach it.

The exercises which accompany each part of the work should be done by referring to the preceding examples ; no key is given as none is required. In every case the exercises are less difficult than the examples. The vocabulary for the exercises is given with them.

Part Third of the volume contains sentences which illustrate the use of the prepositions : a difficult subject in Arabic as in other languages ; also a still larger number of sentences in which the verbs themselves take special prepositions to give them their particular meanings.

A list of weak verbs, classified and arranged to show the vowel of the middle letter of the Imperfect Tense, is also given.

Vocabularies of English-Arabic verbs and English-Arabic nouns are published concurrently with this work and in a more complete form than would be possible in the work itself.

No transliteration is employed as no system whatever is of any real value in teaching the true pronunciation of the language.

A few days spent in acquiring the letters with their approximate pronunciation obviates the necessity for a system which at the best is imperfect and only too often fatal to the progress of the student.

It is hoped that this work will be found useful to students not only of the classical language, but also to those who desire to obtain a knowledge of the colloquial. It is worthy of note in this connection that native Arabic scholars incline to the belief that the quickest and best method of acquiring the colloquial is through the medium of the classical ; this, too, is my firm conviction. There is certainly a great tendency to exaggerate the difference that exists between them. When once the correct form of expression has been acquired, it is an easy matter to glide into the looser forms of speech characteristic of the spoken language.

Although this work is written primarily for the English student of Arabic, it should nevertheless prove of value to the Arabic student of English.

In conclusion, I desire to express my obligations and best thanks to Muallim Habeeb Al Chury, particularly in the elucidation of idiomatic difficulties and in the final revision of the work.

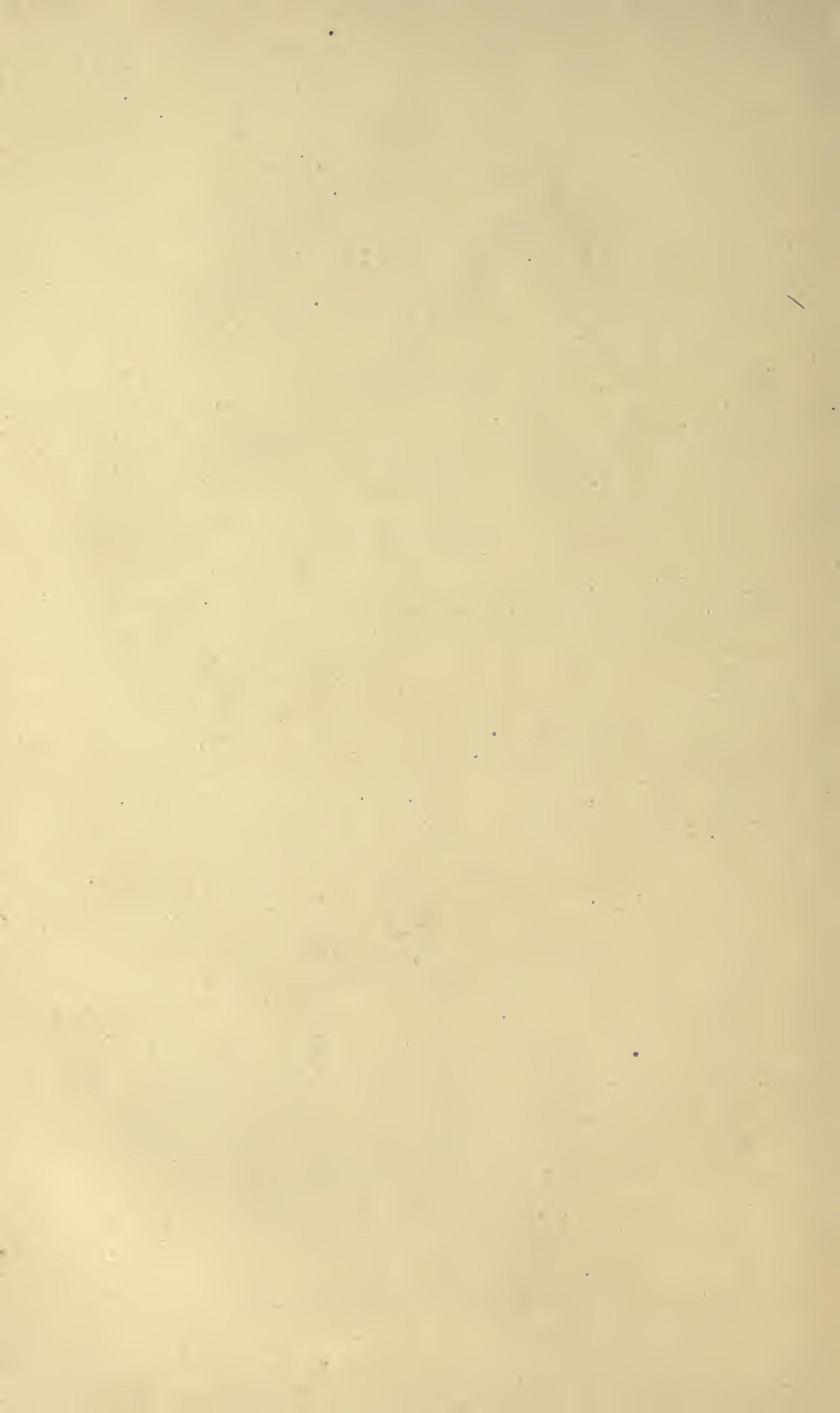
Gaza, April, 1912.

CONTENTS.

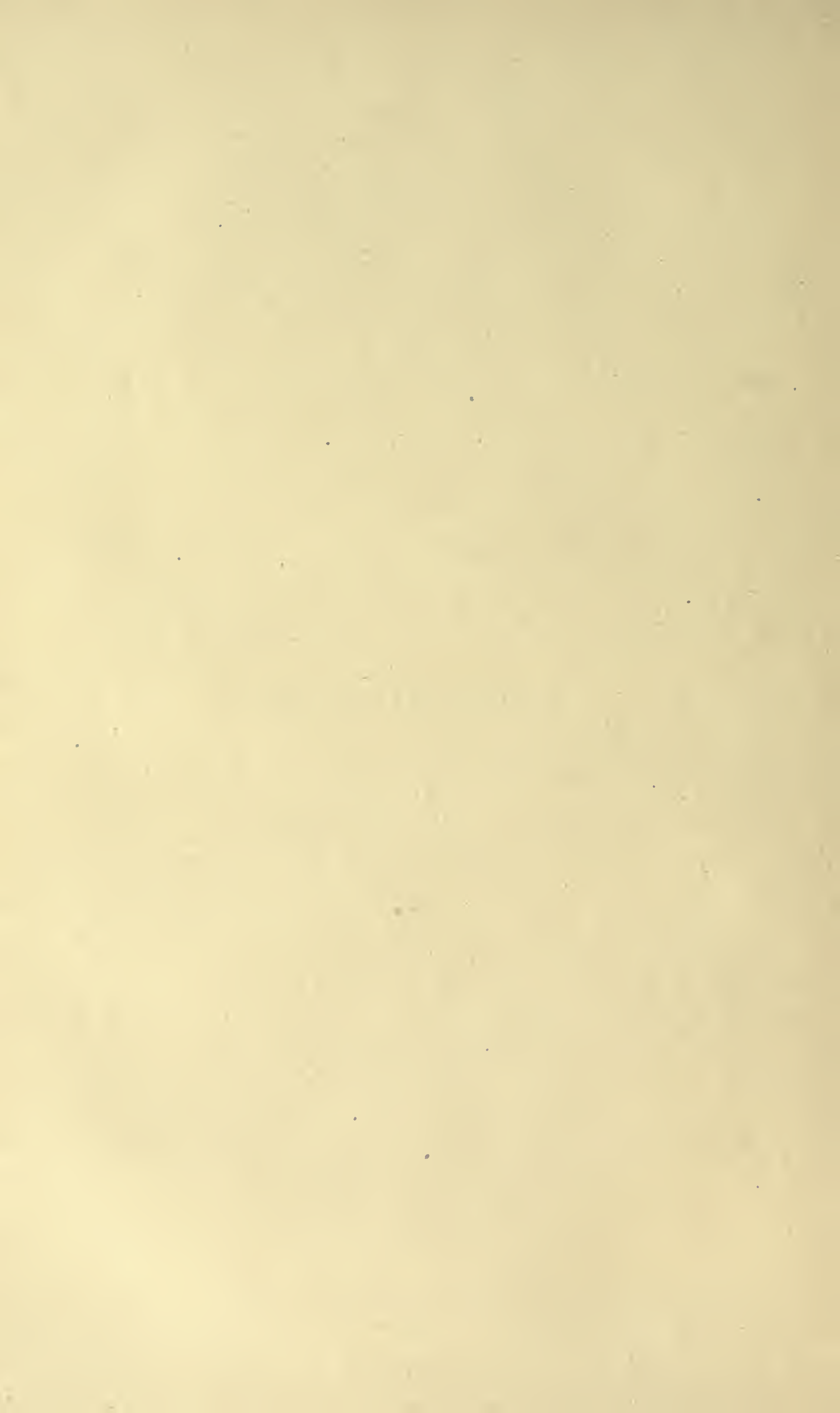
INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER.

PART FIRST.

PART SECOND



INTRODUCTION.



INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

THE ALPHABET.

The alphabet أَلْحُرُوفُ ٱلْهِجَائِيَّةُ contains twenty-eight letters which are all consonants.

They are written and read from right to left.

Their forms are modified in accordance with their position in a word whether at the beginning, middle, or end, and whether single or joined to others.

Their names, forms and approximate pronunciation are given in the following table.

Final	Medial	Initial	De-tached	Name	
ـا	ـا	ا	ا	Aleph	أَلِفٌ
ـب	ـبـ	بـ	ب	Bā	بَاءٌ
ـت ـة	ـتـ	تـ	ت	Tā	تَاءٌ
ـث	ـثـ	ثـ	ث	Thā	ثَاءٌ
ـج	ـجـ	جـ	ج	Jīm	جِيمٌ
ـح	ـحـ	حـ	ح	Ḥā	حَاءٌ
ـخ	ـخـ	خـ	خ	Khā	خَاءٌ
ـد	ـد	د	د	Dāl	دَالٌ
ـذ	ـذ	ذ	ذ	Dhāl	ذَالٌ
ـر	ـر	ر	ر	Rā	رَاءٌ
ـز	ـز	ز	ز	Zain	زَايٌ
ـس	ـسـ	سـ	س	Sīn	سِينٌ
ـش	ـشـ	شـ	ش	Shīn	شِينٌ
ـص	ـصـ	صـ	ص	Ṣād	صَادٌ
ـض	ـضـ	ضـ	ض	Ḍhād	ضَادٌ
ـط	ـطـ	طـ	ط	Ṭā	طَاءٌ
ـظ	ـظـ	ظـ	ظ	Ṭhā	ظَاءٌ
ـع	ـعـ	عـ	ع	‘Ain	عَيْنٌ
ـغ	ـغـ	غـ	غ	Gh (r) ain	غَيْنٌ
ـف	ـفـ	فـ	ف	Fā	فَاءٌ
ـق	ـقـ	قـ	ق	Ḳāf	قَافٌ

Final	Medial	Initial	De-tached	Name	
ـك	ـكـ	كـ	ك	Kāf	كَافْ
ـل	ـلـ	لـ	ل	Lām	لَامْ
ـم	ـمـ	مـ	م	Mīm	مِيمْ
ـن	ـنـ	نـ	ن	Nūn	نُونْ
ـه	ـهـ	هـ	ه	Hā	هَاءْ
ـو	ـو	و	و	Wāw	وَاوْ
ـي	ـيـ	يـ	ي	Yā	يَاءْ

لا Lam-aleph is also reckoned a letter of the alphabet by the native grammarians.

THE PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTERS.

ا is (I) a weak aspirate depending for its sound on the accompanying vowel, (II) a sound resembling the glottal catch, (III) a sign of lengthening of the vowel.

ب is *b*.

ت is a soft dental, softer than our *t*.

ث as *th* in theory, thin.

ج as *s* in measure (in Egypt *g* in good).

ح is a strong and smooth pectoral sound produced by the forcible expulsion of the breath through an almost closed glottis as in a deep sigh.

خ is a vibratory guttural sound produced on expiration by the oscillation of the appendages of the throat as in the Scotch word loch, and the German *ch* as in ich.

د is a soft dental.

ذ is like *th* in that, than, these.

ر is as *r* (English) distinctly articulated in all positions.

ز is as *z* distinctly articulated.

س is as *s* but with more of a hissing sound, as in kiss.

ش is as *sh* in sherbet.

ص is a "lisping" *s* pronounced somewhat as *s* in sod.

ض is an aspirated د strongly pronounced.

ط has a broader and more open sound than ت.

ظ has a broad and open sound something like *th* in those.

ع is a strong guttural produced by quick and forcible closure of the wind-pipe.

غ is a strong guttural produced as in the effort of gargling and sounds similar to "*ghr*" in English.

ف as *f*.

ق is a strong guttural *k* produced as in the cawing of a crow,

ك, ل, م, ن, ه, و as our *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *h*, *w*, ي as *y*.

The letters خ, ر, ص, ض, ط, ظ, غ and ق have a broad and open sound when vowelled by ـَ.

The pronunciation of the ح, خ, ض, ط, ظ, ع, غ and ق can only be acquired from the lips of Arabic speaking people; no combination of letters adequately represents their sound.

The ا, و and ي are weak letters and resemble vowels in pronunciation and use.

The alphabet is divided for phonetic reasons into two groups called respectively solar and lunar letters.

They are thus named because one letter in each group begins the Arabic word for sun and moon respectively.

The solar letters are ت ث د ذ ر ز س ش ص ض ط ظ ل ن

The lunar are أ ب ج ح خ ع غ ف ق ك م ه و ي

THE ORTHOGRAPHICAL SIGNS أَلضَّوَابِط

(1) The Vowels ـُ ـَ ـِ

(2) The Sukūn ـْ

(3) The Maddeh ـٓ

(4) The Shaddeh ـّ

(5) Hamzet al-Kata ـٔ

(6) Hamzet al-Wasl ـٱ

(1) THE VOWELS أَلْحَرَكَات

The vowels are three in number, and are signs only, being written above or below the consonants to which they belong. The vowels are also used as terminations of inflection in nouns and the moods of verbs. The signs are ـُ ـَ ـِ they correspond to the three weak letters and when combined with them form the long vowel sounds, as:—

أُو آا إِي وُو وَا وِي يُو يَا يِي

(2) THE SUKŪN أَلسُّكُونُ

The symbol ـْ is placed over an unvowelled letter, as مِنْ or قَدْ; the ن or د is called silent; the م or ق is vowelled.

(3) THE MADDEH أَلْمَدَّةُ

Hamzet أ followed by aleph ا is written آ as آمَنَ from أَامَنَ.

(4) THE SHADDEH أَلشَّدَّةُ

The symbol ـّ signifies that the letter over which it is placed is doubled in pronunciation; the first letter is silent, and the second has the vowel upon the ـّ, as:— أَلرَّبُّ the Lord, pronounced أَرْرَبُّ.

(5) HAMZET AL-ḲATA هَمْزَةُ ٱلْقَطْعِ

ـٔ is the hiatus which is felt before the vowel which it introduces. It occurs as a root letter in all positions and may take any vowel and is always pronounced.

(6) HAMZET AL-WASL هَمْزَةُ ٱلْوَصْلِ

The sign ـٱ is placed over the initial ا when not directly beginning a sentence, to indicate that the aleph is elided and the preceding vowel joined to the following consonant, as نَفْسُ ٱلْإِنْسَانِ the soul of man, pronounced نَفْسُلْإِنْسَانِ.

Note :—Arabic is pronounced as it is written ; long vowels as such, and short vowels as such. Where a letter is doubled by ـّ both letters must be distinctly pronounced.

In reading, the following changes are to be observed when a pause occurs.

(1) The final short vowels and the nunation are dropped except in the case of ـً where the final نُون only is dropped.

(2) ة with or without the nunation is pronounced ه .

THE NUMBERS.

For ordinary use the numerical figures are employed precisely as in our own language, being read from left to right, as :—

١٢٣٤٥٦٧٨٩٠	١٩١١
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0	1 9 1 1

PART FIRST.

THE ARTICLE أَلْ ٱلتَّعْرِيفِ

The article أَلْ is definite and indeclinable.

There is no indefinite article, but with an indefinite noun the case endings are doubled and have the force of the indefinite article, thus :—

nominative	ـُ	أَلضَّمَّةُ	becomes	ـٌ	تَنْوِينُ ٱلضَّمِّ
accusative	ـَ	أَلْفَتْحَةُ	becomes	ـً	تَنْوِينُ ٱلْفَتْحِ
genitive	ـِ	أَلْكَسْرَةُ	becomes	ـٍ	تَنْوِينُ ٱلْكَسْرِ

as :— nominative	أَلرَّجُلُ	the man	رَجُلٌ	a man
accusative	أَلرَّجُلَ	the man	رَجُلاً	a man
genitive	أَلرَّجُلِ	the man	رَجُلٍ	a man

NOTE :—The nunation in the accusative case requires an ا except when the noun ends in ة or آء as حَيَاةً life, سَمَاءً heaven.

When the article is prefixed to a noun beginning with a solar letter its ل is elided in pronunciation and the sign ـّ is placed over the solar letter to indicate that it is doubled in pronunciation, as:— أَلشَّمْسُ pronounced أَشَّمْسُ.

WORDS BEGINNING WITH SOLAR AND LUNAR LETTERS.

SOLAR	أَلشَّمْسِيَّة		LUNAR	أَلْقَمَرِيَّة	
the hills	أَلتِّلَال	ت	the earth	أَلْأَرْض	أ
the snow	أَلثَّلْج	ث	the sea	أَلْبَحْر	ب
the age	أَلدَّهْر	د	the mountains	أَلْجِبَال	ج
the arm	أَلذِّرَاع	ذ	the heat	أَلْحَرَارَة	ح
the thunder	أَلرَّعْد	ر	the gulf	أَلْخَلِيج	خ
the time	أَلزَّمَن	ز	the grass	أَلْعُشْب	ع
the plain	أَلسَّهْل	س	the clouds	أَلْغُيُوم	غ
the sun	أَلشَّمْس	ش	the horse	أَلْفَرَس	ف
the morning	أَلصَّبَاح	ص	the moon	أَلْقَمَر	ق
the light	أَلضَّوْء	ض	the palm of the hand	أَلْكَفّ	ك
the way	أَلطَّرِيق	ط	the air	أَلْهَوَاء	ه
the noon	أَلظُّهْر	ظ	the valley	أَلْوَادِي	و
the night	أَللَّيْل	ل	the city	أَلْمَدِينَة	م
the river	أَلنَّهْر	ن	the day	أَلْيَوْم	ي

Exercise أَلتَّمْرِين

Place the article before the following nouns and the ّ upon those beginning with solar letters:—

garment	ثَوْب	sand	رَمْل	crow	غُرَاب
shield	تُرْس	button	زِرّ	firmament	فَلَك
lightning	بَرْق	armour	سِلَاح	saying	قَوْل

house	دَارٌ	beverage	شَرَابٌ	vineyard	كَرْمَةٌ
sheep	خَرُوفٌ	voice	صَوْتٌ	note (music)	لَحْنٌ
rope	حَبْلٌ	rib	ضِلْعٌ	king	مَلِكٌ
generation	جِيلٌ	edge	طَرَفٌ	light	نُورٌ
horizon	أُفْقٌ	nail	ظُفْرٌ	cat	هِرٌّ
wolf	ذِئْبٌ	neck	عُنُقٌ	minister	وَزِيرٌ
		orphan	يَتِيمٌ		

THE PRONOUNS.

The pronouns are :—personal, demonstrative, and relative.

The most common constructions in the Arabic language are those of the personal pronoun with the preposition, with the noun, and with the verb; the student should, therefore, become familiar with them at the outset.

The demonstrative and relative pronouns follow and they, too, require special attention to be given them.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS أَلضَّمَائِرُ

These are of two kinds :—

I. Separate أَلْمُنْفَصِلَةُ

II. Annexed أَلْمُتَّصِلَةُ

I. The separate personal pronouns are :—

	Plural.			Dual.		Singular.	
	fem	*masc.*		*common.*		*fem*	*masc.*
we	نَحْنُ	نَحْنُ	we	نَحْنُ	I	أَنَا	أَنَا
you	أَنْتُنَّ	أَنْتُمْ	you two	أَنْتُمَا	thou	أَنْتِ	أَنْتَ
they	هُنَّ	هُمْ	they two	هُمَا	she, he	هِيَ	هُوَ

These express the nominative case أَلرَّفْعُ

II. The annexed personal pronouns, pronominal suffixes, are :—

	Plural.		Dual.		Singular.	
	fem.	*masc.*	*common.*		*fem.*	*masc.*
ours, us	نَا	نَا		my, me	ي نِي	ي نِي
your, you	كُنَّ	كُمْ	your, you two كُمَا	thy, thee	كِ	كَ
their, them	هُنَّ	هُمْ	their, them two هُمَا	her	هَا	his him هُ

These are annexed to the (I.) preposition, (II.) noun and (III.) verb; with the preposition and noun they are virtually in the genitive case أَلْجَرّ and with the verb in the accusative أَلنَّصْب.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS ANNEXED TO PREPOSITIONS.

The prepositions to which the pronouns are annexed are :—

from	عَنْ	in, among	فِي	from, some of	مِنْ
by	بِ	upon, against	عَلَى	to	إِلَى
				to, belonging to	لِ

as :— from us مِنَّا from me مِنِّي

from you *fem.* مِنْكُنَّ	from you مِنْكُمْ	from you two مِنْكُمَا	from thee *fem.* مِنْكِ	from thee مِنْكَ
from them *fem.* مِنْهُنَّ	from them مِنْهُمْ	from them two مِنْهُمَا	from her مِنْهَا	from him مِنْهُ

NOTE :—هُ, هُمَا and هُمْ become هِ ، هِمَا and هِمْ after ـِ and when ي is affixed to عَنْ and مِنْ they become عَنِّي and مِنِّي also لِ becomes لَ when joined to the pronouns except in the case of the first person singular, as :—

to you	إِلَيْكُمْ	to them	إِلَيْهِمْ	to them two	إِلَيْهِمَا	to him	إِلَيْهِ
upon you	عَلَيْكُمْ	upon them	عَلَيْهِمْ	upon them two	عَلَيْهِمَا	upon him	عَلَيْهِ
among you	فِيكُمْ	among them	فِيهِمْ	among them two	فِيهِمَا	in him, it	فِيهِ

to him, his لَهُ to her, hers لَهَا to us, ours لَنَا to me, mine لِي

by me بِي by thee, *fem.* بِكِ by her بِهَا by them two بِهِمَا

EXERCISE.

Translate :— إِلَيْكَ إِلَيْنَا إِلَيَّ فِيَّ فِيكُمَا فِيكُنَّ عَلَيَّ عَلَيْنَا
عَنَّا عَنْهُنَّ عَنْكِ عَنْكُمْ.

From you, from her, from you two, to her, to you two, to you *(pl.)*, upon you, upon you two, upon her, upon them *(fem.)*, upon them, among you, in you, yours *(dual)*, yours *(fem.)*, theirs, by him, by us.

II. PERSONAL PRONOUNS ANNEXED TO NOUNS.

NOTE :— (*a*) The ي personal pronoun when annexed to nouns and particles must always be preceded by ـِ .

(*b*) The five nouns أَبٌ father, أَخٌ brother, حَمُو father-in-law, فَمٌ mouth, ذُو possessor, take و in the nominative case, ا in the accusative, and ي in the genitive when in construction with nouns and pronouns other than ي of the first person.

(*a*)

	Genitive.	*Accusative.*	*Nominative.*
my angel	مَلَاكِي	مَلَاكِي	مَلَاكِي
our apostle, messenger	رَسُولِنَا	رَسُولَنَا	رَسُولُنَا
thy ambassador	سَفِيرِكَ	سَفِيرَكَ	سَفِيرُكَ
your agent	وَكِيلِكُمْ	وَكِيلَكُمْ	وَكِيلُكُمْ
his physician	طَبِيبِهِ	طَبِيبَهُ	طَبِيبُهُ
their prince	أَمِيرِهِمْ	أَمِيرَهُمْ	أَمِيرُهُمْ
my chair	كُرْسِيِّ	كُرْسِيِّ	كُرْسِيِّ

(*b*)

	Genitive.	*Accusative.*	*Nominative.*
his father	أَبِيهِ	أَبَاهُ	أَبُوهُ
thy brother	أَخِيكَ	أَخَاكَ	أَخُوكَ
her father-in-law	حَمِيهَا	حَمَاهَا	حَمُوهَا
thy mouth	فِيكَ	فَاكَ	فُوكَ
a rich man	ذِي مَالٍ	ذَا مَالٍ	ذُو مَالٍ 1
rich persons	ذَوِي أَمْوَالٍ	ذَوِي أَمْوَالٍ	ذَوُو أَمْوَالٍ
my father	أَبِي	أَبِي	أَبِي

Words for practice :—

	Plural.	Singular.		Plural.	Singular.
son	أَبْنَاءٌ	إِبْنٌ	sister	أَخَوَاتٌ	أُخْتٌ
aunt	عَمَّاتٌ	عَمَّةٌ	uncle	أَعْمَامٌ	عَمٌّ
father	آبَاءٌ	أَبٌ	cousin. *fem.*	بَنَاتُ عَمٍّ	بِنْتُ عَمٍّ
grandfather	أَجْدَادٌ	جَدٌّ	relative	أَنْسِبَاءُ	نَسِيبٌ
cousin	أَبْنَاءُ عَمٍّ	إِبْنُ عَمٍّ	mother	أُمَّهَاتٌ	أُمٌّ
relative	أَقْرِبَاءُ	قَرِيبٌ 2	daughter	بَنَاتٌ	بِنْتٌ

Translate, stating case :—

مَدِينَتِي ، ثَوْبِكِ ، كَرْمُهُمْ ، خَرُوفِي ، سِلَاحِهِمْ ، وَزِيرُكُمْ ، ذِرَاعِهَا

عُنُقُهُ ، جَبَلَكَ ، دَرَاهِمِهِمْ ، صَوْتِي ، قَوْلَنَا ، أُمَّهَاتُهُمْ ، بَنَاتَنَا

إِبْنُ عَمِّي ، أَبْنَاءُ عَمِّهِمْ ، قَرِيبِي ، أَخَوَاتُكُمْ ، عَمِّكَ ، بَنَاتُ عَمِّي ، أَبْنَاؤُنَا ، عَمَّتِهَا

Their fathers, my brother, his cousin, her mouth, my sisters, your uncle, my aunts, our relatives, his sons, my son, your daughter, their daughters.

1. The second of two nouns in construction is put in the genitive case.

2. Nouns ending with an additional آءُ (generally written) اءُ or ى do not take the nunation.

III. PERSONAL PRONOUNS ANNEXED TO THE VERB.

The third person masculine singular active of ضَرَبَ with the objective pronouns affixed.

NOTE:—The letter ن is inserted between the ي personal pronoun and the last letter of the verb to prevent the latter from being vowelled by ِ.

He struck us	ضَرَبَنَا	He struck me	ضَرَبَنِي

He struck you	ضَرَبَكُمْ ضَرَبَكُنَّ	He struck you two	ضَرَبَكُمَا	He struck you	ضَرَبَكَ ضَرَبَكِ
He struck them	ضَرَبَهُمْ ضَرَبَهُنَّ	He struck them two	ضَرَبَهُمَا	He struck him	ضَرَبَهُ ضَرَبَهَا

This exercise should be continued on the other persons of the verb, not only in the preterite but in the imperfect and imperative. The student will thus realize the important part which the verb plays in the language, and the necessity for acquiring a thorough practical knowledge of it. The detached pronouns should also be written before the verb for exercise; their use is for emphasis, as:— نَحْنُ ضَرَبْنَاهُمْ هُوَ ضَرَبَنِي

Exercise.

Conjugate the following verbs with the objective pronouns:—

to serve	خَدَمَ يَخْدُمُ	to create	خَلَقَ يَخْلُقُ	to assist	نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ
to carry	حَمَلَ يَحْمِلُ	to conquer	غَلَبَ يَغْلِبُ	to request	طَلَبَ يَطْلُبُ
to put, make, begin	جَعَلَ يَجْعَلُ	to prevent	مَنَعَ يَمْنَعُ	to gather	جَمَعَ يَجْمَعُ

NOTE:—(*a*) سَ and سَوْفَ are prefixed to the imperfect to express the near and distant future respectively, as:—

He will come سَوْفَ يَأْتِي , سَيَأْتِي

(*b*) The hemzeh of the imperative takes ـِ when the vowel of the middle letter of the imperfect is ـَ or ـِ, and ـُ when it is, ـُ, as:—إِجْمَلْ masc. أُنْصُرْ , إِحْمِلْ .

(*c*) The second person plural masculine preterite when followed by an affixed pronoun introduces the letter و as:— ضَرَبْتُمُوهُ ye struck him.

(*d*) The preterite of the passive voice is formed from the preterite of the active by giving ـِ to the penultimate consonant and ـُ to every vowelled letter preceding it, as, ضُرِبْتُ I was struck. The imperfect of the passive voice has the same form as the imperfect of the active, the vowel of the prefix is ـُ and of the penultimate consonant ـَ, as:— يُضْرَبُ he will be struck.

(*e*) The letter لِ commands the 1st and 3rd persons in the active and passive voices and apocopates the final vowel of the verb with the نْ of dual and plural, as :—

let him or it be carried	لِيُحْمَلْ	let him carry	لِيَحْمِلْ
let them two be prevented	لِيُمْنَعَا	let them two (*fem.*) prevent him	لِتَمْنَعَاهُ
let them be served	لِيُخْدَمُوا	let them serve you	لِيَخْدُمُوكَ

EXERCISE.

Parse and translate :—

أُطْعِمْتَ ، تَلْطِمِينَهُ ، إِجْمَعْهُمْ ، غَلَبْتُمُونَا ، مَنَعْتُمَانِي ، خَدَمْتُمْ

يَحْمِلُونَ إِحْمِلِيهِ إِجْعَلُوهُمْ يَجْعَلَانِكُمْ لِتَطْلُبْهَا أُنْصُرْنَ

NOTE :—Learn chapter on "Rules for the Formation of the Verb," in Grammar, page 23, et seq.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

إِسْمُ ٱلْإِشَارَةِ

The Demonstrative Pronoun agrees with its noun in gender, number and case. When it qualifies the irregular plural of irrational objects it takes the feminine singular, as:—

هٰذِهِ ٱلْأَشْيَاء these things.

The dual of both noun and pronoun adds انِ to the singular for the nominative, يْنِ for the genitive. *The noun qualified always takes the article,* as:— هٰذَا ٱلْبَيْتُ this house.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Those in common use are:—

NEAR OBJECT.

Plural. Common.		Dual. Fem.	Dual. Mas.		Singular. Fem.	Singular. Mas.	
these هٰؤُلَاءِ	these two	هَاتَانِ	هٰذَانِ	this	هٰذِهِ	هٰذَا	nom.
these هٰؤُلَاءِ	these two	هَاتَيْنِ	هٰذَيْنِ	this	هٰذِهِ	هٰذَا	*gen. and accus.*

The demonstrative pronoun is used less frequently without هَا.

أُولَاءِ	تَانِ	ذَانِ	ذِيْ	ذَا
أُولَاءِ	تَيْنِ	ذَيْنِ	ذِيْ	ذَا

INTERMEDIATE OBJECT.

that تِيْكَ ذَاكَ

DISTANT OBJECT.

those أُولٰئِكَ that تِلْكَ ذٰلِكَ

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS WITH NOUNS.

Plural.	Dual.			Singular.
Nom.	*Gen. and Accus.*	*Nom.*		*Nom.*
هَؤُلَاءِ ٱلرِّجَالُ	هَذَيْنِ ٱلرَّجُلَيْنِ .	هَذَانِ ٱلرَّجُلَانِ	this man	هَذَا ٱلرَّجُلُ
هَؤُلَاءِ ٱلنِّسَاءُ	هَاتَيْنِ ٱلْمَرْأَتَيْنِ .	هَاتَانِ ٱلْمَرْأَتَانِ	this woman	هَذِهِ ٱلْمَرْأَةُ
أُولَئِكَ ٱلْأَطْفَالُ	ذَيْنِكَ ٱلطِّفْلَيْنِ .	ذَانِكَ ٱلطِّفْلَانِ	that infant	ذَاكَ ٱلطِّفْلُ
أُولَئِكَ ٱلطِّفْلَاتُ	تَيْنِكَ ٱلطِّفْلَتَيْنِ .	تَانِكَ ٱلطِّفْلَتَانِ	that infant *fem.*	تِيكَ ٱلطِّفْلَةُ
أُولَئِكَ ٱلْأَوْلَادُ	ذَيْنِكَ ٱلْوَلَدَيْنِ .	ذَانِكَ ٱلْوَلَدَانِ	that child	ذَلِكَ ٱلْوَلَدُ
أُولَئِكَ ٱلْجَوَارِي	تَيْنِكَ ٱلْجَارِيَتَيْنِ .	تَانِكَ ٱلْجَارِيَتَانِ	that maid	تِلْكَ ٱلْجَارِيَةُ
تِلْكَ ٱلْأُمَمُ	تَيْنِكَ ٱلْأُمَّتَيْنِ .	تَانِكَ ٱلْأُمَّتَانِ	that nation	تِلْكَ ٱلْأُمَّةُ

Words for practice :—

	Plural.	Sing.		Plural.	Sing.		Plural.	Sing.
day	أَيَّامٌ	يَوْمٌ	hour	سَاعَاتٌ	سَاعَةٌ	minute	دَقَائِقُ	دَقِيقَةٌ
year	سِنُونَ سِنِينَ	سَنَةٌ	month	أَشْهُرٌ	شَهْرٌ	week	أَسَابِيعُ	أُسْبُوعٌ
age	أَجْيَالٌ	جِيلٌ	time	أَوْقَاتٌ	وَقْتٌ	time	أَزْمِنَةٌ	زَمَانٌ

Translate :—

هَذِهِ ٱلدَّقِيقَةُ . هَاتَانِ ٱلدَّقِيقَتَانِ . هَذِهِ ٱلدَّقَائِقُ . تِلْكَ ٱلسَّاعَةُ . تَيْنِكَ ٱلسَّاعَتَيْنِ
تِلْكَ ٱلسَّاعَاتُ . هَذِهِ ٱلسِّنِينَ . تِلْكَ ٱلْأَزْمِنَةُ . ذَلِكَ ٱلْيَوْمُ . ذَيْنِكَ ٱلْيَوْمَيْنِ . تِلْكَ
ٱلْأَيَّامُ . هَذَا ٱلْأُسْبُوعُ . هَذِهِ ٱلْأَسَابِيعُ

This hour, that month, those days, that time, these two years, these two months, *accusative*, these plains, these two rivers, this morning, this night, that city, these two cities, those two kings, these two ways.

1. Plural nouns of this class (plural of plurals) do not take the ـٌ or ـٍ ; the genitive is indicated by ـَ .

THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS أَسْمَاءُ ٱلْمَوْصُولِ

The relative pronouns are :—

أَلَّذِي who مَنْ who مَا what.

أَلَّذِي is used for definite antecedents.

مَنْ and مَا for indefinite antecedents.

أَلَّذِي agrees with its antecedent in gender, number and case. When it qualifies the irregular plural of irrational objects it takes the feminine singular, as :— أَلْأَيَّامُ ٱلَّتِي the days which.

Plural.		Dual.		Singular.		
fem.	*mas.*	*fem.*	*mas.*	*fem.*	*mas.*	
أَللَّوَاتِي	أَلَّذِينَ	أَللَّتَانِ	أَللَّذَانِ	أَلَّتِي	أَلَّذِي	*nom.*
أَلْأُولَى أَللَّاتِي أَللَّائِي		أَللَّتَيْنِ	أَللَّذَيْنِ	أَلَّتِي	أَلَّذِي	*obj. gen.*

Plural.	Dual.		Singular.	
Nom.	*Gen. and Accus.*	*Nom.*		*Nom.*
أَلرِّجَالُ ٱلَّذِينَ	أَلرَّجُلَيْنِ ٱللَّذَيْنِ	أَلرَّجُلَانِ ٱللَّذَانِ	the man who	أَلرَّجُلُ ٱلَّذِي
أَلنِّسَاءُ ٱللَّوَاتِي	أَلْمَرْأَتَيْنِ ٱللَّتَيْنِ	أَلْمَرْأَتَانِ ٱللَّتَانِ	the woman who	أَلْمَرْأَةُ ٱلَّتِي

the dogs which أَلْكِلَابُ ٱلَّتِي

See Relative Sentences in Part Second.

THE NOUN أَلْإِسْمُ

The noun is of two kinds :—

(1) Primitive, أَلْإِسْمُ ٱلْجَامِدُ which cannot be referred to any verbal root, as :— إِبِلٌ a camel.

(2) Derived, أَلاِسْمُ الْمُشْتَقُّ which is formed directly from the verb, as:— مُؤْمِنٌ a believer from آمَنَ to believe.

There are twelve kinds of these derived nouns. A verb may admit of all or any of the twelve nouns being formed from it according to its meaning. The following tables give their names and range of application.

	فَعَلَ to do	قَطَعَ to cut	ضَرَبَ to beat	قَامَ to rise	أَكَلَ to eat
Noun of action	فِعْلٌ	قَطْعٌ	ضَرْبٌ	قِيَامٌ	أَكْلٌ
Noun of unity	فَعْلَةٌ	قَطْعَةٌ	ضَرْبَةٌ	قَوْمَةٌ	أَكْلَةٌ
Noun of species	فِعْلَةٌ	قِطْعَةٌ	—	قِيمَةٌ	إِكْلَةٌ
Noun of action with م	مَفْعَلٌ	مَقْطَعٌ	—	مَقَامٌ	مَأْكَلٌ
Noun of agent	فَاعِلٌ	قَاطِعٌ	ضَارِبٌ	قَائِمٌ	آكِلٌ
Noun of attribute	أَفْعَلُ	أَقْطَعُ	أَضْرَبُ	أَقْوَمُ	آكَلُ
Noun of excess	فَعَّالٌ	قَطَّاعٌ	ضَرَّابٌ	قَوَّامٌ	أَكُولٌ
Noun of object	مَفْعُولٌ	مَقْطُوعٌ	مَضْرُوبٌ	—	مَأْكُولٌ
The measures	فَعُولٌ فَعِيلٌ فَعُولٌ	قَطُوعٌ	ضَرِيبٌ	قَوِيمٌ	—
Noun of time and place	مَفْعِلٌ	مَقْطَعٌ	مَضْرِبٌ	مَقَامٌ	مَأْكَلٌ
Noun of instrument		مِفْعَلٌ	مِقْطَعٌ	مِضْرَبٌ	—

to cut قَطَعَ		noun of action		noun of unity and species	noun of agent and attribute	noun of object noun of action with م, noun of time and place
1	قَطَّعَ	تَقْطِعَةٌ	تَقْطِيعٌ	تَقْطِيعَةٌ	مُقَطِّعٌ	مُقَطَّعٌ
2	قَاطَعَ	مُقَاطَعَةٌ	قِطَاعٌ	قِطَاعَةٌ	مُقَاطِعٌ	مُقَاطَعٌ
3	أَقْطَعَ		إِقْطَاعٌ	إِقْطَاعَةٌ	مُقْطِعٌ	مُقْطَعٌ

4	تَقَطَّعَ	تَقَطُّعٌ	تَقَطُّعَةٌ	مُتَقَطِّعٌ	مُتَقَطَّعٌ
5	تَقَاطَعَ	تَقَاطُعٌ	تَقَاطُعَةٌ	مُتَقَاطِعٌ	مُتَقَاطَعٌ
6	إِنْقَطَعَ	إِنْقِطَاعٌ	إِنْقِطَاعَةٌ	مُنْقَطِعٌ	مُنْقَطَعٌ
7	إِقْتَطَعَ	إِقْتِطَاعٌ	إِقْتِطَاعَةٌ	مُقْتَطِعٌ	مُقْتَطَعٌ
8	إِسْتَقْطَعَ	إِسْتِقْطَاعٌ	إِسْتِقْطَاعَةٌ	مُسْتَقْطِعٌ	مُسْتَقْطَعٌ

See Chapter on DERIVATIVE NOUNS in Grammar, pages 61-84.

THE VERB أَلْفِعْلُ

The verb in its simplest form is of two kinds.

(1) Three-lettered.

(2) Four-lettered.

The three-lettered verb may receive an increase of one, two, or three letters in its root; the four-lettered, one or two only: they then become derived forms. This addition of letters is accompanied by an increase or modification of meaning as shown in the following table.

to be safe	سَلِمَ	to write	كَتَبَ	to accept	قَبِلَ
to submit to to surrender to salute	سَلَّمَ	to teach to write to form squadrons	كَتَّبَ	to kiss to be in front of	قَبَّلَ
to keep peace with	سَالَمَ	to correspond with	كَاتَبَ	to correspond to	قَابَلَ
to profess Islam to betray	أَسْلَمَ	to dedicate to cause to write	أَكْتَبَ	to approach to thrive	أَقْبَلَ
to take possession of	تَسَلَّمَ	to assemble in squadrons	تَكَتَّبَ	to receive to be granted	تَقَبَّلَ

to become reconciled with one another	تَسَالَمَ	to correspond with one another	تَكَاتَبَ	to meet face to face to be compared with	تَقَابَلَ
to take charge of to kiss the stone of Kaaba	إِسْتَلَمَ	to transcribe to inscribe one's name	إِكْتَتَبَ	to extemporize (speech)	إِقْتَبَلَ
to yield to be submissive	إِسْتَسْلَمَ	to ask to write to dictate to	إِسْتَكْتَبَ	to go to meet to receive	إِسْتَقْبَلَ

See chapter on "Meanings of the Derived Forms" in Grammar pages 47-60.

THE ADJECTIVE.

Nouns with Adjectives أَلصِّفَةُ وَٱلْمَوْصُوفُ

(1) The adjective agrees with the noun preceding it in being definite or indefinite, and in number, gender, and case, as, an ignorant man رَجُلٌ جَاهِلٌ the ignorant man أَلرَّجُلُ ٱلْجَاهِلُ

(2) It is invariably formed on the measure of (I) the noun of agent, (II) object, (III) attribute, (IV) superiority, (V) excess, (VI) relation, or (VII) number.

(3) When the adjective qualifies a noun in the feminine singular or the irregular plural of irrational objects it takes the suffix ة as, the large tree أَلشَّجَرَةُ ٱلْكَبِيرَةُ, the large trees أَلْأَشْجَارُ ٱلْكَبِيرَةُ

NOTE:—The verbal roots of derived adjectives are known by the omission of the characteristic servile letters, as لَامِعٌ shining, from لَمَعَ to shine; مَفْتُوحٌ open, from فَتَحَ to open; عَظِيمٌ great, from عَظُمَ to be great; أَفْضَلُ superior, from فَضَلَ to be in excess; كَذَّابٌ a great liar, from كَذَبَ to lie; بَحْرِيٌّ nautical, from بَحْرٌ sea.

ADJECTIVES ON THE MEASURE OF THE NOUN OF AGENT إِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ

The noun of agent is formed from three-lettered verbs by inserting ا after the first radical and vowelling the second with ـِ; and it is formed from both transitive and intransitive verbs.

Feminine Singular and Plural.		*Masculine Singular.*	
a wide room	غُرْفَةٌ وَاسِعَةٌ	a cold day	يَوْمٌ بَارِدٌ
a previous lesson	مَقَالَةٌ سَابِقَةٌ	vain teaching	تَعْلِيمٌ بَاطِلٌ
pleasing news	أَخْبَارٌ سَارَّةٌ	an incomplete work	عَمَلٌ نَاقِصٌ
flowing rivers	أَنْهَارٌ جَارِيَةٌ	ripe figs	تِينٌ نَاضِجٌ
low-lying places	أَمَاكِنُ وَاطِيَةٌ	a bright sky	جَلَدٌ لاَمِعٌ
hard rocks	صُخُورٌ قَاسِيَةٌ	a good conscience	ضَمِيرٌ صَالِحٌ
stormy winds	رِيَاحٌ عَاصِفَةٌ	severe punishment	قِصَاصٌ صَارِمٌ
coming events	أُمُورٌ آتِيَةٌ	a learned teacher	مُعَلِّمٌ عَالِمٌ
one moment	بُرْهَةٌ وَاحِدَةٌ	a high mountain	جَبَلٌ عَالٍ
the coming year	أَلسَّنَةُ الآتِيَةُ	pure gold	ذَهَبٌ خَالِصٌ
righteous judgments	أَحْكَامٌ عَادِلَةٌ	a clear saying	قَوْلٌ وَاضِحٌ
a general connection	عِلاَقَةٌ شَامِلَةٌ	surpassing beauty	حُسْنٌ بَارِعٌ
a decisive battle	حَرْبٌ فَاصِلَةٌ	a cloudy day	يَوْمٌ غَائِمٌ
an abiding result	نَتِيجَةٌ بَاقِيَةٌ	a vain attempt	سَعْيٌ بَاطِلٌ
a noble example	قُدْوَةٌ سَامِيَةٌ	a hollow speech	كَلاَمٌ فَارِغٌ
a faded rose	وَرْدَةٌ ذَابِلَةٌ	sufficient time	وَقْتٌ كَافٍ

Feminine Singular and Plural.		*Masculine Singular.*	
one drop	نُقْطَةٌ وَاحِدَةٌ	a perfect example	أُنْمُوذَجٌ تَامٌّ
a severe precept	وَصِيَّةٌ صَارِمَةٌ	a special purpose	قَصْدٌ خَاصٌّ
exalted positions	مَرَاتِبُ عَالِيَةٌ	a firm will	عَزْمٌ ثَابِتٌ
a wide lake	بُحَيْرَةٌ وَاسِعَةٌ	an eager learner	مُتَعَلِّمٌ رَاغِبٌ
loud laughter	ضِحْكَةٌ عَالِيَةٌ	a clear sky	جَلَدٌ صَافٍ
sincere service	خِدْمَةٌ خَالِصَةٌ	a skilful builder	بَنَّاءٌ حَاذِقٌ
sinful men	أُنَاسٌ خَاطِئُونَ	a continuous purpose	قَصْدٌ دَائِمٌ
good men	رِجَالٌ صَالِحُونَ	abundant thanks	شُكْرٌ وَافِرٌ
necessary things	أَشْيَاءُ لَازِمَةٌ	a sharp knife	سِكِّينٌ مَاضٍ
sharp swords	سُيُوفٌ بَاتِرَةٌ	a skilful carpenter	نَجَّارٌ مَاهِرٌ
convincing proofs	بَرَاهِينُ قَاطِعَةٌ	complete agreement	وِفَاقٌ تَامٌّ
a weak defence	حُجَّةٌ وَاهِيَةٌ	a sharp sword	سَيْفٌ حَادٌّ
tall trees	أَشْجَارٌ بَاسِقَةٌ	the following day	أَلْيَوْمُ ٱلتَّالِي
past ages	أَجْيَالٌ سَالِفَةٌ	the past age	أَلْعَصْرُ ٱلْمَاضِي
good old-age	شَيْبَةٌ صَالِحَةٌ	the present age	أَلدَّهْرُ ٱلْحَاضِرُ
a true word	كَلِمَةٌ صَادِقَةٌ	the coming century	أَلْقَرْنُ ٱلْقَادِمُ
a subtle question	مَسْأَلَةٌ غَامِضَةٌ	a brave man	رَجُلٌ بَاسِلٌ
profitable works	أَعْمَالٌ نَافِعَةٌ	a firm foundation	أَسَاسٌ رَاسِخٌ
perfect liberty	حُرِّيَّةٌ تَامَّةٌ	complete independence	إِسْتِقْلَالٌ كَامِلٌ
a hungry soul	نَفْسٌ جَائِعَةٌ	a corrupt fountain	يَنْبُوعٌ فَاسِدٌ
secret thoughts	نَوَايَا بَاطِنَةٌ	a lying tongue	لِسَانٌ كَاذِبٌ
lawful means	وَسَائِلُ جَائِزَةٌ	necessary compensation	تَعْوِيضٌ لَازِمٌ

Exercise.

Form adjectives from the following verbs on the measure of the noun of agent.

to know	عَلِمَ	to be ignorant	جَهِلَ	to be skilful	مَهَرَ حَذَقَ
to be able	قَدِرَ	to be firm	ثَبَتَ	to be pure	طَهُرَ
to write	كَتَبَ	to precede	سَبَقَ	to come, go	أَتَى
to be spacious	وَسِعَ	to appear, rise	طَلَعَ	to be necessary	لَزِمَ
possession	مِلْكٌ أَمْلَاكٌ	heart	قَلْبٌ قُلُوبٌ	youth	شَابٌّ شُبَّانٌ
amount	مِقْدَارٌ مَقَادِيرُ	season, passage	فَصْلٌ فُصُولٌ	world	عَالَمٌ عَالَمُونَ
purpose	قَصْدٌ مَقَاصِدُ	builder	بَنَّاءٌ بَنَّاؤُونَ	person	شَخْصٌ أَشْخَاصٌ

Translate:—A skilful youth, skilful builders, wide possessions, pure hearts, the world to come, a necessary amount, the preceding passage, the rising sun, a learned person, an ignorant scribe, the wide world, a fixed purpose, the coming season, ignorant persons, able writers.

ADJECTIVES ON THE MEASURE OF THE NOUN OF AGENT OF THE DERIVED VERBS.

These are formed by prefixing مُ to the verb after dropping the servile ا when present, and vowelling the penultimate consonant with ـِ

Feminine Singular and Plural.		*Masculine Singular.*	
fearful news	أَخْبَارٌ مُخَوِّفَةٌ	a joyful saying	قَوْلٌ مُفَرِّحٌ
strengthening medicines	أَدْوِيَةٌ مُقَوِّيَةٌ	an exciting speech	كَلَامٌ مُهَيِّجٌ
a militant sect	طَائِفَةٌ مُجَاهِدَةٌ	a singing bird	طَيْرٌ مُغَرِّدٌ
favourable conditions	ظُرُوفٌ مُسَاعِدَةٌ	a clear saying	قَوْلٌ مُبِينٌ

a hypocritical woman	إِمْرَأَةٌ مُنَافِقَةٌ	a dreary winter	شِتَاءٌ مُوحِشٌ
a convenient opportunity	فُرْصَةٌ مُلَائِمَةٌ	a delightful season	فَصْلٌ مُبْهِجٌ
a peaceful nation	أُمَّةٌ مُسَالِمَةٌ	a dark night	لَيْلٌ مُظْلِمٌ
fertile land	أَرْضٌ مُخْصِبَةٌ	a distressing noise	صَوْتٌ مُزْعِجٌ
pleasing melodies	أَلْحَانٌ مُطْرِبَةٌ	a refreshing drink	شَرَابٌ مُنْعِشٌ
late rains	أَمْطَارٌ مُتَأَخِّرَةٌ	a fatal disease	دَاءٌ مُمِيتٌ
contradictory sayings	أَقْوَالٌ مُتَضَارِبَةٌ	civilized people	شَعْبٌ مُتَمَدِّنٌ
successive revelations	إِعْلَانَاتٌ مُتَتَابِعَةٌ	a fickle person	رَجُلٌ مُتَقَلِّبٌ
a lonely island	جَزِيرَةٌ مُنْفَرِدَةٌ	an entrenched army	جَيْشٌ مُتَحَصِّنٌ
a divided kingdom	مَمْلَكَةٌ مُنْقَسِمَةٌ	an overflowing river	نَهْرٌ مُنْدَفِقٌ
a full well	بِئْرٌ مُمْتَلِئَةٌ	leavened dough	عَجِينٌ مُخْتَمِرٌ
different occasions	أَوْقَاتٌ مُخْتَلِفَةٌ	a united people	شَعْبٌ مُتَّحِدٌ
confused things	أُمُورٌ مُلْتَبِسَةٌ	a straight line	خَطٌّ مُسْتَقِيمٌ
weak hands	أَيَادٍ مُسْتَرْخِيَةٌ	a circular building	بِنَاءٌ مُسْتَدِيرٌ

ADJECTIVES ON THE MEASURE OF THE NOUN OF OBJECT إِسْمُ ٱلْمَفْعُولِ

Formed by prefixing مَ and inserting وْ after the second radical.

NOTE.—The noun of object is only formed from transitive verbs.

Feminine Singular and Plural.		*Masculine Singular.*	
a beloved daughter	إِبْنَةٌ مَحْبُوبَةٌ	an opened door	بَابٌ مَفْتُوحٌ
an inhabited country	بِلَادٌ مَسْكُونَةٌ	a broken window	شُبَّاكٌ مَكْسُورٌ
refuted proofs	بَرَاهِينُ مَرْدُودَةٌ	a slaughtered sheep	خَرُوفٌ مَذْبُوحٌ
an observed precept	وَصِيَّةٌ مَحْفُوظَةٌ	boiled eggs	بَيْضٌ مَسْلُوقٌ
a washed towel	مِنْشَفَةٌ مَغْسُولَةٌ	shelled almonds	لَوْزٌ مَقْشُورٌ
printed books	كُتُبٌ مَطْبُوعَةٌ	an imprisoned thief	لِصٌّ مَحْبُوسٌ
a ridden mare	فَرَسٌ مَرْكُوبَةٌ	a wet blanket	حِرَامٌ مَبْلُولٌ
acceptable sayings	أَقْوَالٌ مَقْبُولَةٌ	a drawn sword	سَيْفٌ مَسْلُولٌ
sold goods	أَمْتِعَةٌ مَبِيعَةٌ	roasted meat	لَحْمٌ مَشْوِيٌّ
cut paper	وَرَقَةٌ مَقْطُوعَةٌ	a folded garment	ثَوْبٌ مَطْوِيٌّ
a known point	نُقْطَةٌ مَعْلُومَةٌ	a memorable day	يَوْمٌ مَشْهُورٌ
		customary reward	جَزَاءٌ مَأْلُوفٌ

Exercise.

Form adjectives from the following verbs on the measure of the noun of object.

to look, see	نَظَرَ	to protect	وَقَى	to hew	نَحَتَ
to bury	دَفَنَ	to be special	خَصَّ	to kill	قَتَلَ
to mention	ذَكَرَ	to promise	وَعَدَ	to wound	جَرَحَ
to narrate	رَوَى	to refuse	رَفَضَ	to accept	قَبِلَ

image	تِمْثَالٌ تَمَاثِيلُ	number	عَدَدٌ أَعْدَادٌ	gift	عَطِيَّةٌ عَطَايَا
state	وِلَايَةٌ اتٌ	treasure	كَنْزٌ كُنُوزٌ	thing	شَيْءٌ أَشْيَاءُ
tale	رِوَايَةٌ اتٌ	arrange-ment	تَرْتِيبٌ اتٌ *	animal	حَيَوَانٌ اتٌ
				sayings	قَوْلٌ أَقْوَالٌ

* Nouns of action from *derived verbs take the regular* feminine plural.

Translate:—A wounded horse, a promised gift, a slain animal, rejected gifts, narrated tales, protected states, buried treasures, visible things, graven images, special arrangements, mentioned numbers, broken images, the promised things, the wounded animals, numbered treasures, buried images, acceptable sayings, acceptable gifts, acceptable things.

ADJECTIVES ON THE MEASURE OF THE NOUN OF OBJECT OF THE DERIVED VERBS.

These are formed as the noun of agent by prefixing مُ to the verb and vowelling the penultimate consonant with ـَ.

Feminine Singular and Plural.		*Masculine Singular.*	
holy books	أَسْفَارٌ مُقَدَّسَةٌ	appointed time	وَقْتٌ مُعَيَّنٌ
hanging pictures	صُوَرٌ مُعَلَّقَةٌ	an honoured guest	ضَيْفٌ مُكَرَّمٌ
lowered flags	أَعْلَامٌ مُنَكَّسَةٌ	an inlaid crown	تَاجٌ مُرَصَّعٌ
rent sheets	شَرَاشِفُ مُمَزَّقَةٌ	a hidden defect	عَيْبٌ مُسْتَتَرٌ
an exact art	صِنَاعَةٌ مُحْكَمَةٌ	deferred hope	رَجَاءٌ مُمَاطَلٌ
repeated benefits	فَوَائِدُ مُقَرَّرَةٌ	an effete religion	دِينٌ مُلَاشًى
walled cities	مُدُنٌ مُسَوَّرَةٌ	a perfect work	عَمَلٌ مُتْقَنٌ
forsaken dwellings	مَنَازِلُ مُغَادَرَةٌ	a closed door	بَابٌ مُغْلَقٌ
a burnt sacrifice	ذَبِيحَةٌ مُحْرَقَةٌ	a reformed religion	دِينٌ مُصْلَحٌ
current tales	حِكَايَا مُتَدَاوَلَةٌ	a revealed book	كِتَابٌ مُنْزَلٌ

ADJECTIVES ON THE MEASURE OF THE NOUN OF ATTRIBUTE فَعِيلٌ

Feminine Singular and Plural.		*Masculine Singular.*	
a lovely woman	إِمْرَأَةٌ جَمِيلَةٌ	a faithful servant	خَادِمٌ أَمِينٌ
a large village	قَرْيَةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ	an old garment	ثَوْبٌ عَتِيقٌ
a new church	كَنِيسَةٌ جَدِيدَةٌ	delicious grapes	عِنَبٌ لَذِيذٌ
a noble quality	صِفَةٌ شَرِيفَةٌ	severe cold	بَرْدٌ شَدِيدٌ
a great distance	مَسَافَةٌ بَعِيدَةٌ	a sound body	جِسْمٌ صَحِيحٌ
tender feelings	إِحْسَاسَاتٌ رَقِيقَةٌ	a long time	وَقْتٌ طَوِيلٌ
a short time	مُدَّةٌ قَصِيرَةٌ	a valuable seal-ring	خَاتَمٌ ثَمِينٌ
precious stones	حِجَارَةٌ كَرِيمَةٌ	a weak voice	صَوْتٌ ضَعِيفٌ
pleasant dreams	أَحْلَامٌ لَذِيذَةٌ	a wonderful sight	مَنْظَرٌ بَدِيعٌ
a deep lake	بُحَيْرَةٌ عَمِيقَةٌ	fresh bread	خُبْزٌ طَرِيٌّ
foul odour	رَائِحَةٌ كَرِيهَةٌ	a slow messenger	رَسُولٌ بَطِيٌّ
many powers	قُوَّاتٌ كَثِيرَةٌ	a wonderful thought	فِكْرٌ عَجِيبٌ
long experiments	إِمْتِحَانَاتٌ طَوِيلَةٌ	a little child	وَلَدٌ صَغِيرٌ
extensive plains	سُهُولٌ فَسِيحَةٌ	a sociable man	رَجُلٌ أَنِيسٌ
sound intellects	عُقُولٌ سَلِيمَةٌ	a stingy person	شَخْصٌ بَخِيلٌ
recent times	أَوْقَاتٌ حَدِيثَةٌ	a bad kind	جِنْسٌ رَدِيٌّ
deep waters	مِيَاهٌ عَمِيقَةٌ	a famous author	مُؤَلِّفٌ شَهِيرٌ
a large step	خُطْوَةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ	a heavy burden	حِمْلٌ ثَقِيلٌ
great principles	مَبَادِئُ عَظِيمَةٌ	a great danger	خَطَرٌ عَظِيمٌ

Feminine Singular and Plural.		*Masculine Singular.*	
abundant possessions	أَمْلَاكٌ جَزِيلَةٌ	gentle pleading	تَوَسُّلٌ لَطِيفٌ
an old piece	قِطْعَةٌ عَتِيقَةٌ	a strange mystery	سِرٌّ غَرِيبٌ
a weak nature	طَبِيعَةٌ ضَعِيفَةٌ	a brief account	وَصْفٌ وَجِيزٌ
shallow ground	أَرْضٌ خَفِيفَةٌ	a noble steed	جَوَادٌ كَرِيمٌ
abundant rain	أَمْطَارٌ غَزِيرَةٌ	sure love	حُبٌّ أَكِيدٌ
a short story	قِصَّةٌ قَصِيرَةٌ	abundant riches	غِنًى جَزِيلٌ
a true tale	رِوَايَةٌ صَحِيحَةٌ	a sorrowful heart	قَلْبٌ كَئِيبٌ

Exercise.

Form adjectives from the following verbs on the measure فَعِيلٌ of the noun of attribute.

to be strange	غَرُبَ	to be harsh	غَلُظَ	to be fortified	حَصُنَ
to be sociable	أَنُسَ	to be small	صَغُرَ	to be beautiful	ظَرُفَ
to be noble	شَرُفَ	to be much, many	كَثُرَ	to be old	قَدُمَ
to wonder at	عَجِبَ	thought	فِكْرٌ أَفْكَارٌ	to be great	عَظُمَ
city	مَدِينَةٌ مُدُنٌ	speech	كَلَامٌ	affair	أَمْرٌ أُمُورٌ
religion	دِيَانَةٌ ات	castle	قَلْعَةٌ قِلَاعٌ	face, aspect	وَجْهٌ أَوْجُهٌ

Translate:—Strange affairs, a harsh speech, a short time, fortified castles, old religions, great cities, a wonderful speech, a small city, small things, many aspects, old castles, fortified cities, a sociable person, many thoughts, beautiful cities, a noble woman, many cities, much thought, much time, strange thoughts.

ADJECTIVES ON CERTAIN MEASURES OF THE NOUN OF ATTRIBUTE.

فَعْلٌ فِعْلٌ فَعَلٌ فَعِلٌ فَيْعِلٌ

Feminine Singular and Plural.		*Masculine Singular.*	
a difficult question	مَسْأَلَةٌ صَعْبَةٌ	a sagacious youth	شَابٌّ شَهْمٌ
easy duties	فُرُوضٌ سَهْلَةٌ	an easy duty	فَرْضٌ سَهْلٌ
bulky bodies	أَجْسَامٌ ضَخْمَةٌ	sweet water	مَاءٌ عَذْبٌ
tender branches	أَغْصَانٌ رَطْبَةٌ	a tender branch	غُصْنٌ رَطْبٌ
intelligent words	أَلْفَاظٌ جَزْلَةٌ	an intelligent servant	عَبْدٌ فَطِنٌ
rough roads	طُرُقٌ وَعِرَةٌ	a rough road	طَرِيقٌ وَعْرٌ
difficult things	أُمُورٌ عَسِرَةٌ	a joyful disciple	تِلْمِيذٌ فَرِحٌ
a dangerous harbour	مِينَا خَطِرَةٌ	a tired workman	عَامِلٌ تَعِبٌ
unclean lips	شِفَاهٌ نَجِسَةٌ	a dirty face	وَجْهٌ قَذِرٌ
a defiled hand	يَدٌ دَنِسَةٌ	an ill-natured person	شَخْصٌ شَرِسٌ
dangerous things	أَشْيَاءُ خَطِرَةٌ	rough cloth	جُوخٌ خَشِنٌ
a pleasant odour	رَائِحَةٌ طَيِّبَةٌ	a good reward	جَزَاءٌ حَسَنٌ
easy studies	دُرُوسٌ هَيِّنَةٌ	a dying sheik	شَيْخٌ مَيِّتٌ
evil traits	أَخْلَاقٌ سَيِّئَةٌ	a narrow door	بَابٌ ضَيِّقٌ
a good gift	عَطِيَّةٌ جَيِّدَةٌ	an easy disposition	طَبْعٌ لَيِّنٌ
pleasant features	مَلَامِحُ بَهِجَةٌ	a religious man	إِنْسَانٌ دَيِّنٌ
hard times	أَزْمِنَةٌ صَعْبَةٌ	a brave leader	قَائِدٌ شُجَاعٌ
good works	أَعْمَالٌ حَسَنَةٌ	a serious illness	مَرَضٌ عُضَالٌ

Exercise.

Form adjectives from the following verbs on the measure فَيْعِل of the noun of attribute, as:— هَانَ to be easy هَيِّنٌ easy, to be agreeable, pleasant طَابَ, to be straight, narrow ضَاقَ, to be excellent, good, جَادَ

method, plan	طَرِيقَةٌ	way	طَرِيقٌ طُرُقٌ	kind	نَوْعٌ أَنْوَاعٌ
exit	مَخْرَجٌ مَخَارِجُ	entrance	مَدْخَلٌ مَدَاخِلُ *	state, condition, circumstance	حَالٌ أَحْوَالٌ

Translate:—Good kinds, an excellent method, a narrow way, a narrow outlet, agreeable conditions, easy ways, an easy method, an easy exit, a good state, narrow entrances.

* The plural of the noun of time and place and the noun of instrument is formed by inserting ا after the second radical and vowelling the third with ـِ.

ADJECTIVES ON THE MEASURE OF THE NOUN OF EXCESS اِسْمُ ٱلْمُبَالَغَةِ

a very powerful king	مَلِكٌ جَبَّارٌ	a lying salesman	بَائِعٌ كَذَّابٌ
the all-bountiful God	أَلْإِلٰهُ ٱلْفَيَّاضُ	an ambitious minister	وَزِيرٌ طَمَّاعٌ
a thieving servant	خَادِمٌ سَرَّاقٌ	the all-forgiving God	أَلْإِلٰهُ ٱلتَّوَّابُ
a distinguished chief	رَئِيسٌ مِفْضَالٌ	an evil eye	عَيْنٌ شِرِّيرَةٌ
a grateful servant	عَبْدٌ شَكُورٌ	a hospitable prince	أَمِيرٌ مِضْيَافٌ
a hasty man	إِنْسَانٌ عَجُولٌ	a holy person	رَجُلٌ قِدِّيسٌ
an affectionate friend	صَدِيقٌ وَدُودٌ	a great author	مُؤَلِّفٌ جَامِعَةٌ

Exercise.

Form nouns of excess from the following verbs on the measure فَعَّالٌ.

to give	وَهَبَ	to drink	شَرِبَ	to feed	رَزَقَ
to kill	قَتَلَ	to grant	مَنَّ	to travel	جَالَ (جَوَّالٌ)

and on the measure فَعُولٌ

to forgive	غَفَرَ	to be merciful	رَحِمَ	to be jealous	غَارَ غَيُورٌ

ADJECTIVES ON THE MEASURE OF THE NOUN OF RELATION أَلنِّسْبَةُ

The noun of relation is formed by affixing يٌّ to the noun in the masculine singular, as:— أَرْضٌ earth أَرْضِيٌّ earthly,

Feminine Singular and Plural.		*Masculine Singular.*	
a philanthropic society	جَمْعِيَّةٌ خَيْرِيَّةٌ	a highway	دَرْبٌ سُلْطَانِيٌّ
daily papers	جَرَائِدُ يَوْمِيَّةٌ	household bread	خُبْزٌ بَيْتِيٌّ
an eastern city	مَدِينَةٌ شَرْقِيَّةٌ	a wild animal	حَيَوَانٌ بَرِّيٌّ
the present year	أَلسَّنَةُ ٱلْحَالِيَّةُ	official dress	لِبَاسٌ رَسْمِيٌّ
nervous diseases	أَمْرَاضٌ عَصَبِيَّةٌ	moral progress	تَقَدُّمٌ أَدَبِيٌّ
human nature	أَلطَّبِيعَةُ ٱلْإِنْسَانِيَّةُ	outward growth	نُمُوٌّ خَارِجِيٌّ
sailing ships	مَرَاكِبُ شِرَاعِيَّةٌ	common opinion	رَأْيٌ عُمُومِيٌّ
the Turkish Empire	أَلْمَمْلَكَةُ ٱلْعُثْمَانِيَّةُ	a special reason	سَبَبٌ خُصُوصِيٌّ
the Turkish language	أَللُّغَةُ ٱلْعُثْمَانِيَّةُ	a savage man	إِنْسَانٌ وَحْشِيٌّ

special rules	قَوَانِينُ خُصُوصِيَّةٌ	divine truth	حَقٌّ إِلٰهِيٌّ
ceremonial ordinances	فَرَائِضُ طَقْسِيَّةٌ	secret conversation	حَدِيثٌ سِرِّيٌّ
political questions	مَسَائِلُ سِيَاسِيَّةٌ	a usual amount	مِقْدَارٌ اعْتِيَادِيٌّ
spiritual mercies	مَرَاحِمُ رُوحِيَّةٌ	special attention	إِنْتِبَاهٌ خُصُوصِيٌّ
religious books	كُتُبٌ دِينِيَّةٌ	natural affection	حُبٌّ طَبِيعِيٌّ
merchant steamers	بَوَاخِرُ تِجَارِيَّةٌ	the human heart	أَلْقَلْبُ ٱلْبَشَرِيُّ
physical exercises	أَلْعَابٌ رِيَاضِيَّةٌ	moral choice	خِيَارٌ أَدَبِيٌّ
intellectual proofs	بَيِّنَاتٌ عَقْلِيَّةٌ	gradual improvement	تَحَسُّنٌ تَدْرِيجِيٌّ
fundamental principles	مَبَادِئُ سِيَاسِيَّةٌ	a practical comment	شَرْحٌ عَمَلِيٌّ
practical questions	سُؤَالَاتٌ عَمَلِيَّةٌ	a royal palace	قَصْرٌ مُلُوكِيٌّ
true reasons	أَسْبَابٌ حَقِيقِيَّةٌ	figurative language	كَلَامٌ مَجَازِيٌّ
a natural difficulty	صُعُوبَةٌ طَبِيعِيَّةٌ	a military system	نِظَامٌ عَسْكَرِيٌّ

Exercise.

Form adjectives from the following nouns on the measure of the noun of relation.

God	أَللهُ (إِلٰهٌ)	moon	قَمَرٌ أَقْمَارٌ	sun	شَمْسٌ
origin	أَصْلٌ أُصُولٌ	person	شَخْصٌ أَشْخَاصٌ	man	إِنْسَانٌ
providence	عِنَايَةٌ ات	will	مَشِيئَةٌ ات	trait	خُلْقٌ أَخْلَاقٌ
power	قُوَّةٌ ات	pity	شَفَقَةٌ	presence	حُضُورٌ
year	سَنَةٌ سِنِينٌ	month	شَهْرٌ أَشْهُرٌ	flower	زَهْرٌ زُهُورٌ
attribute, quality	صِفَةٌ ات	phrase	عِبَارَةٌ ات	system	نِظَامٌ

Translate:—Personal traits, human pity, the human will, original traits, original phrases, sun flowers, the solar system, lunar months, lunar years, the Divine will, the Divine Presence, Divine Providence, manly attributes, original qualities.

NUMBER. The ordinal adjectives are formed on the measure of the noun of agent (except the first). The feminine takes ة .

the first year	أَلسَّنَةُ ٱلأُولَى	the first part	أَلْجُزْءُ ٱلأَوَّلُ
the second sign, verse	أَلآيَةُ ٱلثَّانِيَةُ	the second chapter	أَلأَصْحَاحُ ٱلثَّانِي
the third hymn	أَلتَّرْنِيمَةُ ٱلثَّالِثَةُ	the third heading	أَلْبَابُ ٱلثَّالِثُ
the fourth hour	أَلسَّاعَةُ ٱلرَّابِعَةُ	the fourth century	أَلْقَرْنُ ٱلرَّابِعُ

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES إِسْمُ ٱلتَّفْضِيلِ

(1) The comparative degree is expressed on the measure أَفْعَلُ followed by مِنْ and the superlative by prefixing أَلْ to the measure, as أَلأَفْعَلُ or by putting the adjective (without the article) in construction with the noun in the plural, as أَحْسَنُ ٱلْمَأْكُولَاتِ the best of eatables.

	Superlative.	*Comparative.*	*Positive.*
accomplished	أَلأَفْضَلُ	أَفْضَلُ مِنْ	فَاضِلٌ
active	أَلأَنْشَطُ	أَنْشَطُ "	نَشِيطٌ
bad	أَلأَرْدَأُ	أَرْدَأُ "	رَدِيءٌ
beautiful	أَلأَجْمَلُ	أَجْمَلُ "	جَمِيلٌ
big	أَلأَضْخَمُ	أَضْخَمُ "	ضَخْمٌ
bold	أَلأَجْرَأُ	أَجْرَأُ "	جَرِيءٌ
brave	أَلأَجْسَرُ	أَجْسَرُ "	جَسُورٌ

	Superlative.	*Comparative.*	*Positive.*
brief	الأَوْجَزُ	أَوْجَزُ مِنْ	وَجِيزٌ
cheap	الأَرْخَصُ	أَرْخَصُ "	رَخِيصٌ
clean	الأَنْظَفُ	" أَنْظَفُ	نَظِيفٌ
cold	الأَبْرَدُ	" أَبْرَدُ	بَارِدٌ
cruel	الأَقْسَى	" أَقْسَى	قَاسٍ
deep	الأَعْمَقُ	" أَعْمَقُ	عَمِيقٌ
distant	الأَقْصَى	" أَقْصَى	قَصِيٌّ
early	الأَبْكَرُ	" أَبْكَرُ	بَاكِرٌ
eloquent	الأَبْلَغُ	" أَبْلَغُ	بَلِيغٌ
eloquent	الأَفْصَحُ	" أَفْصَحُ	فَصِيحٌ
enthusiastic	الأَحْمَسُ	" أَحْمَسُ	حَمِيسٌ
esteemed	الأَوْجَهُ	" أَوْجَهُ	وَجِيهٌ
expensive	الأَغْلَى	" أَغْلَى	غَالٍ
famous	الأَشْهَرُ	" أَشْهَرُ	شَهِيرٌ
far	الأَبْعَدُ	" أَبْعَدُ	بَعِيدٌ
fat	الأَسْمَنُ	" أَسْمَنُ	سَمِينٌ
fine	الأَدَقُّ	" أَدَقُّ	دَقِيقٌ
good	الأَجْوَدُ	" أَجْوَدُ	جَيِّدٌ
greedy	لأَشْرَهُ	" أَشْرَهُ	شَرِهٌ
great	الأَعْظَمُ	" أَعْظَمُ	عَظِيمٌ
happy	الأَسْعَدُ	" أَسْعَدُ	سَعِيدٌ
hard	الأَصْلَبُ	" أَصْلَبُ	صَلْبٌ

	Superlative.	*Comparative.*	*Positive.*
heavy	أَلْأَثْقَلُ	أَثْقَلُ مِنْ	ثَقِيلٌ
high	أَلْأَعْلَى	أَعْلَى "	عَالٍ
honourable	أَلْأَشْرَفُ	أَشْرَفُ "	شَرِيفٌ
hot	أَلْأَسْخَنُ	أَسْخَنُ "	سُخْنٌ
intelligent	أَلْأَذْكَى	أَذْكَى "	ذَكِيٌّ
large	أَلْأَكْبَرُ	أَكْبَرُ "	كَبِيرٌ
lazy	أَلْأَكْسَلُ	أَكْسَلُ "	كَسْلَانُ
learned	أَلْأَعْلَمُ	أَعْلَمُ "	عَالِمٌ
little	أَلْأَقَلُّ	أَقَلُّ "	قَلِيلٌ
lovely	أَلْأَبْدَعُ	أَبْدَعُ "	بَدِيعٌ
low	أَلْأَوْطَأُ	أَوْطَأُ "	وَاطِئٌ
magnificent	أَلْأَفْخَرُ	أَفْخَرُ "	فَاخِرٌ
mean	أَلْأَدْنَى	أَدْنَى "	دَنِيءٌ
merry	أَلْأَطْرَبُ	أَطْرَبُ "	طَرِبٌ
much, many	أَلْأَكْثَرُ	أَكْثَرُ "	كَثِيرٌ
narrow	أَلْأَضْيَقُ	أَضْيَقُ "	ضَيِّقٌ
near	أَلْأَقْرَبُ	أَقْرَبُ "	قَرِيبٌ
nice	أَلْأَظْرَفُ	أَظْرَفُ "	ظَرِيفٌ
old	أَلْأَقْدَمُ	أَقْدَمُ "	قَدِيمٌ
pleasant	أَلْأَشْهَى	أَشْهَى "	شَهِيٌّ
prudent	أَلْأَفْطَنُ	أَفْطَنُ "	فَطِنٌ
rash	أَلْأَطْيَشُ	أَطْيَشُ "	طَائِشٌ

	Superlative.	*Comparative.*	*Positive.*
sensible	الأعقل	أعقل من	عاقل
sharp	الأحدّ	" أحدّ	حادّ
small	الأصغر	" أصغر	صغير
soft	الأنعم	" أنعم	ناعم
sound	الأصحّ	" أصحّ	صحيح
sour	الأحمض	" أحمض	حامض
strong	الأشدّ	" أشدّ	شديد
strong	الأقوى	" أقوى	قويّ
sweet	الأحلى	" أحلى	حلو
tender	الأرخص	" أرخص	رخص
tender, polite	الأرقّ	" أرقّ	رقيق
thin	الأنحف	" أنحف	نحيف
true	الأصدق	" أصدق	صادق
ugly	الأشنع	" أشنع	شنيع
warm	الأدفأ	" أدفأ	دافئ
weak	الأضعف	" أضعف	ضعيف
wicked	الأشرّ	" أشرّ	شرّير
wise	الأحكم	" أحكم	حكيم

II. Verbs of more than three letters and those which express colour, defects, and points of beauty, take their noun of action in the accusative preceded by an adjective derived from another verb to express comparison, as:— أحمر red, أشدّ حمرة redder.

		Comparative.	*Positive.*
able	مِنْ	أَكْثَرُ اقْتِدَارًا	مُقْتَدِرٌ
black	"	أَشَدُّ سَوَادًا	أَسْوَدُ
blue	"	أَكْثَرُ زُرْقَةً	أَزْرَقُ
boastful	"	أَكْثَرُ افْتِخَارًا	مُفْتَخِرٌ
busy	"	أَكْثَرُ شُغْلًا	مَشْغُولٌ
comfortable	"	أَكْثَرُ إِرَاحَةً	مُرِيحٌ
dangerous	"	أَكْثَرُ خَطَرًا	مُخْطِرٌ
deadly	"	أَشَدُّ إِمَاتَةً	مُمِيتٌ
delightful	"	أَكْثَرُ بَهْجَةً	مُبْهِجٌ
dim	"	أَكْثَرُ عَتْمَةً	مُعْتِمٌ
foolish	"	أَشَدُّ غَبَاوَةً	غَبِيٌّ
glad	"	أَكْثَرُ سُرُورًا	مَسْرُورٌ
green	"	أَشَدُّ اخْضِرَارًا	أَخْضَرُ
hoarse	"	أَشَدُّ بُحَّةً	مَبْحُوحٌ
holy	"	أَكْثَرُ تَقْدِيسًا	مُقَدَّسٌ
late	"	أَكْثَرُ تَأَخُّرًا	مُتَأَخِّرٌ
lonely	"	أَكْثَرُ انْفِرَادًا	مُنْفَرِدٌ
muscular	"	أَشَدُّ عَضَلًا	عَضَلِيٌّ
proud	"	أَكْثَرُ تَكَبُّرًا	مُتَكَبِّرٌ
red	"	أَشَدُّ حُمْرَةً	أَحْمَرُ
smooth	"	أَشَدُّ مَلَاسَةً	أَمْلَسُ
upright	"	أَكْثَرُ اسْتِقَامَةً	مُسْتَقِيمٌ

	Comparative.	*Positive.*
white	أَكْثَرُ بَيَاضًا مِنْ	أَبْيَضُ
younger	أَكْثَرُ حَدَاثَةً "	حَدِيثٌ

NOUNS IN CONSTRUCTION أَلْإِضَافَةُ

Nouns in construction are of two kinds :—

(1) Real construction أَلْإِضَافَةُ ٱلْحَقِيقِيَّةُ

(2) Verbal construction أَلْإِضَافَةُ ٱللَّفْظِيَّةُ

(1) Real construction.

This kind of construction has the force of an implied preposition.

The implied preposition is either فِي of (time or place), as:

The prayer of of the morning صَلَاةُ ٱلصُّبْحِ

The inhabitants of Jerusalem سُكَّانُ أُورُشَلِيمَ

مِنْ Of (material), as:—

A cup of gold كَأْسُ ذَهَبٍ

or لِ of (ownership), as:—

The king's horse حِصَانُ ٱلْمَلِكِ

The first of two nouns thus related is called the antecedent أَلْمُضَافُ the second the complement, أَلْمُضَافُ إِلَيْهِ. Several nouns may thus be put in construction with one another, the second being the complement to the first and the antecedent to the third, and so on.

The antecedent must be stripped of the ن of tanween, ن of dual, ن of plural and the article, and is then declined according to the position in the sentence.

The complement is always in the genitive and it takes the article when definite, as :—

The prince's gift عَطِيَّةُ ٱلْأَمِيرِ

(1) REAL CONSTRUCTION

the depths of the sea	أَعْمَاقُ ٱلْبَحْرِ	the flowers of autumn	زُهُورُ ٱلْخَرِيفِ
the seasons of the year	فُصُولُ ٱلسَّنَةِ	the birds of the air	طُيُورُ ٱلسَّمَاءِ
the cold of winter	بَرْدُ ٱلشِّتَاءِ	the sun's rays	شُعَاعُ ٱلشَّمْسِ
the nature of man	طَبِيعَةُ ٱلْإِنْسَانِ	the moon's crescent	هِلَالُ ٱلْقَمَرِ
the grass of the field	عُشْبُ ٱلْحَقْلِ	nature's work	عَمَلُ ٱلطَّبِيعَةِ
the streams of water	جَدَاوِلُ ٱلْمِيَاهِ	the ocean's roar	ضَجِيجُ ٱلْبَحْرِ
the noise of thunder	صَوْتُ ٱلرَّعْدِ	the earth's pole	قُطْبُ ٱلْأَرْضِ
the lightning flash	وَمِيضُ ٱلْبَرْقِ	the members of the court	أَعْضَاءُ ٱلْمَحْكَمَةِ
the heat of the body	حَرَارَةُ ٱلْجَسَدِ	the king's forces	جُيُوشُ ٱلْمَلِكِ
the branches of trees	أَغْصَانُ ٱلْأَشْجَارِ	the prince of the country	أَمِيرُ ٱلْبِلَادِ
the ships of the sea	مَرَاكِبُ ٱلْبَحْرِ	the court's decree	قَضَاءُ ٱلْمَحْكَمَةِ
the language of flowers	لُغَةُ ٱلزُّهُورِ	the works of men	مَصْنُوعَاتُ ٱلْبَشَرِ
the mouth of the river	مَصَبُّ ٱلنَّهْرِ	the leaders of the army	قُوَّادُ ٱلْجَيْشِ
the sea-shore	شَاطِئُ ٱلْبَحْرِ	the cities of the plain	مُدُنُ ٱلسَّهْلِ
the foot of the hill	أَسْفَلُ ٱلْأَكَمَةِ	the outskirts of the town	ضَوَاحِي ٱلْبَلَدِ
the singing of birds	تَغْرِيدُ ٱلطُّيُورِ	the fruit season	فَصْلُ ٱلْقِطَافِ

the top of the mountain	قِمَّةُ ٱلْجَبَلِ	winter's store	مُؤُونَةُ ٱلشِّتَاءِ
the fords of rivers	مَخَاضَاتُ ٱلْأَنْهَارِ	the blueness of the sky	زُرْقَةُ ٱلْجَوِّ
the snows of winter	ثُلُوجُ ٱلشِّتَاءِ	the instrument of sight	آلَةُ ٱلنَّظَرِ
the insects of the earth	حَشَرَاتُ ٱلْأَرْضِ	the sense of smell	حَاسَّةُ ٱلشَّمِّ
the roots of plants	جُذُورُ ٱلنَّبَاتِ	the glance of the eye	لَمْحُ ٱلْبَصَرِ
the wisdom of the Creator	حِكْمَةُ ٱلْخَالِقِ	the rules of health	قَوَاعِدُ ٱلصِّحَّةِ
the history of the world	تَارِيخُ ٱلْعَالَمِ	a crown of grace	إِكْلِيلُ نِعْمَةٍ
the pleasures of travel	لَذَّاتُ ٱلسَّفَرِ	the power of memory	قُوَّةُ ٱلذَّاكِرَةِ
the result of the examination	نَتِيجَةُ ٱلِامْتِحَانِ	the love of home	مَحَبَّةُ ٱلْوَطَنِ
the school time-table	لَائِحَةُ ٱلْمَدْرَسَةِ	the weapons of defence	أَسْلِحَةُ ٱلْمُدَافَعَةِ
the virtue of man	فَضِيلَةُ ٱلْإِنْسَانِ	the appendix of the book	تَذْيِيلُ ٱلْكِتَابِ
the state of peace	حَالَةُ ٱلسَّلَامِ	the substance of the remark	خُلَاصَةُ ٱلْقَوْلِ
the weakness of the body	ضَعْفُ ٱلْجَسَدِ	a flame of fire	لَهِيبُ ٱلنَّارِ
the soul's delight	بَهْجَةُ ٱلنَّفْسِ	the neighing of horses	صَهِيلُ ٱلْخَيْلِ
heaven's will	مَشِيئَةُ ٱلسَّمَاءِ	the gist of the matter	جُلُّ ٱلْأَمْرِ
truth's triumph	إِنْتِصَارُ ٱلْحَقِّ	the very thing	نَفْسُ ٱلشَّيْءِ
duty's call	نِدَاءُ ٱلْوَاجِبَاتِ	the line of battle	خِطَّةُ ٱلْقِتَالِ
the nation's welfare	خَيْرُ ٱلْأُمَّةِ	a statue of bronze	تِمْثَالُ نُحَاسٍ
the ship's passengers	رُكَّابُ ٱلسَّفِينَةِ	the law of progress	نَامُوسُ ٱلتَّقَدُّمِ
a bird's feathers	رِيشُ طَيْرٍ	the words of the mouth	كَلِمَاتُ ٱلْفَمِ
a hand's breadth	عَرْضُ يَدٍ	the bent of the mind	مَيْلُ ٱلْعَقْلِ
a stone's throw	رَمْيَةُ حَجَرٍ	the civilization of mankind	تَمَدُّنُ ٱلْبَشَرِ

a needle's point	رَأْسُ إِبْرَةٍ	the nobility	أَكَابِرُ ٱلْقَوْمِ
the days of the week	أَيَّامُ ٱلْأُسْبُوعِ	the shipwreck	إِنْكِسَارُ ٱلسَّفِينَةِ
the end of spring	آخِرُ ٱلرَّبِيعِ	the household	أَهْلُ ٱلْبَيْتِ
the beginning of the year	رَأْسُ ٱلسَّنَةِ	the railway-train	قِطَارُ ٱلْحَدِيدِ
the whole day	طُولُ ٱلنَّهَارِ	a foot-step	خُطْوَةُ قَدَمٍ
the dawn of day	فَجْرُ ٱلنَّهَارِ	ill-luck	سُوءُ ٱلْحَظِّ
to-morrow evening	مَسَاءُ غَدٍ	a travelling ticket	رُقْعَةُ سَفَرٍ
yesterday evening	لَيْلَةَ ٱلْبَارِحَةِ	a stone tablet	لَوْحُ حَجَرٍ
yesterday morning	صَبَاحُ أَمْسِ	a day's work	عَمَلُ يَوْمٍ
the day before yesterday	أَوَّلُ ٱلْبَارِحَةِ	the darkness of the night	ظَلَامُ ٱللَّيْلِ

Words for practice :—

hope	أَمَلٌ آمَالٌ	refuge	مَلْجَأٌ	king	مَلِكٌ مُلُوكٌ
opportunity	فُرْصَةٌ فُرَصٌ	light	نُورٌ أَنْوَارٌ	school	مَدْرَسَةٌ مَدَارِسُ
grace	نِعْمَةٌ نِعَمٌ	spoils	غَنِيمَةٌ غَنَائِمُ	ruler	حَاكِمٌ حُكَّامٌ
summer	صَيْفٌ أَصْيَافٌ	Arab	عَرَبِيٌّ عَرَبٌ	rain	مَطَرٌ أَمْطَارٌ
bank (river)	حَافَّةٌ ات	bottom	قَعْرٌ	breadth	عَرْضٌ
evening	عَشَاءٌ أَعْشِيَةٌ	hair	شَعْرَةٌ شَعْرٌ	foam	زَبَدٌ أَزْبَادٌ
		food	طَعَامٌ	whole of	سَحَابَةٌ

Translate :—

مُلُوكُ ٱلْأَرْضِ   مَدَارِسُ ٱلْبِلَادِ   أَثْمَارُ ٱلْأَرْضِ   حَاكِمُ ٱلْمَدِينَةِ   أَشْهُرُ ٱلسَّنَةِ

مُدِيرُ ٱلْبَلَدِ   مُدُنُ ٱلْمَلْجَإِ   أَبْنَاءُ ٱلنُّورِ   نُورُ ٱلْعَالَمِ   طُرُقُ ٱلْحَيَاةِ

كِتَابُ ٱلطَّبِيعَةِ   غَنَائِمُ ٱلْمَدِينَةِ   بِلَادُ ٱلْعَرَبِ   أَثْمَارُ ٱلْعَمَلِ   فُرْصَةُ نِعْمَةٍ

حَرَارَةُ ٱلصَّيْفِ　أَمْطَارُ ٱلشِّتَاءِ　قَعْرُ ٱلْبَحْرِ　حَافَّةُ ٱلنَّهْرِ　يَوْمُ ٱلرَّاحَةِ

عَرْضُ شَعْرَةٍ　سَحَابَةُ ٱلنَّهَارِ　طَعَامُ ٱلْعَشَاءِ　زَبَدُ ٱلْبَحْرِ　ضَوْءُ ٱلشَّمْسِ

Words for practice :—

castle	قَلْعَةٌ قِلَاعٌ	hood	قُبَّعَةٌ	holiday	عُطْلَةٌ
queen	مَلِكَةٌ	foot	رِجْلٌ أَرْجُلٌ	absence	غِيَابٌ
flood	طُوفَانٌ	sand	رَمْلٌ رِمَالٌ	time	وَقْتٌ أَوْقَاتٌ
toil	تَعَبٌ	beginning, head	رَأْسٌ رُؤُوسٌ	cup	كَأْسٌ كُؤُوسٌ
journey	سَفَرٌ أَسْفَارٌ	foot (mountain)	أَسْفَلُ أَسَافِلُ	roof	سَقْفٌ سُقُوفٌ

Translate :—A month's holiday, a year's absence, the water of the sea, the beginning of the month, the whole night, the time of fruit, a cup of water, the king's son, the heart of man, winter season, the children's bread, a man's hood, a horse's head, the man's foot, the sand of the sea, the beginning of summer, the religion of the country, the roof of the house, the queen's castle, a flood of water, a year's toil, a day's journey, the heat of the sun, the foot of the mountain.

(2) Verbal construction.

In this kind of construction the first noun is a derived adjective, namely, the noun of agent, noun of object or noun of attribute.

The article may precede the first noun when the second has it prefixed, as :—The lover of good أَلْمُحِبُّ ٱلْخَيْرِ

an influential person	نَافِذُ ٱلْكَلِمَةِ	nobility of disposition	كَرَمُ ٱلْأَخْلَاقِ
of much benefit	كَثِيرُ ٱلْمَنْفَعَةِ	tall of stature	طَوِيلُ ٱلْقَامَةِ
of ugly aspect	قَبِيحُ ٱلْمَنْظَرِ	of polite manners	حَسَنُ ٱلْآدَابِ
of a generous disposition	كَرِيمُ ٱلْأَخْلَاقِ	of harsh temper	غَلِيظُ ٱلطِّبَاعِ
of evil consequence	وَخِيمُ ٱلْعَاقِبَةِ	good-natured	سَلِيمُ ٱلْقَلْبِ

liberal-minded	رَحْبُ ٱلصَّدْرِ	sincere in action	مُخْلِصُ ٱلْعَمَلِ
of large size	كَبِيرُ ٱلْحَجْمِ	sharp-witted	ذَكِيُّ ٱلْعَقْلِ
courteous	لَطِيفُ ٱلْمُعَاشَرَةِ	ingenious	خَفِيفُ ٱلرُّوحِ
nobility of disposition	شَرَفُ ٱلطِّبَاعِ	gentle-natured	لَيِّنُ ٱلْجَانِبِ
corpulent	ضَخْمُ ٱلْجُثَّةِ	of little experience	قَلِيلُ ٱلِاخْتِبَارِ
without knowledge	عَدِيمُ ٱلْمَعْرِفَةِ	quick of hearing	قَوِيُّ ٱلسَّمْعِ
tranquil	نَاعِمُ ٱلْبَالِ	strong-sighted	حَدِيدُ ٱلْبَصَرِ
sick in body	عَلِيلُ ٱلْجِسْمِ	of pleasant odour	طَيِّبُ ٱلرَّائِحَةِ
soft of touch	نَاعِمُ ٱلْمَلْمَسِ	swift of motion	سَرِيعُ ٱلْحَرَكَةِ
of independent action	مُطْلَقُ ٱلتَّصَرُّفِ	of strong constitution	قَوِيُّ ٱلْبِنْيَةِ
of little understanding	قَلِيلُ ٱلْإِدْرَاكِ	of much value	كَثِيرُ ٱلْقِيمَةِ
a lover of study	مُحِبُّ ٱلدَّرْسِ	eloquent	طَلْقُ ٱللِّسَانِ
of fearful aspect	هَائِلُ ٱلْمَنْظَرِ	rough of touch	خَشِنُ ٱلْمَلْمَسِ
of immortal memory	مُخَلَّدُ ٱلذِّكْرِ	costly	غَالِي ٱلثَّمَنِ
of a haughty disposition	ذَمِيمُ ٱلْخُلُقِ	of lovely appearance	جَمِيلُ ٱلصُّورَةِ
acuteness of intellect	حِدَّةُ ٱلذِّهْنِ	of praiseworthy action	مَحْمُودُ ٱلْفِعْلِ
sound of body	صَحِيحُ ٱلْجِسْمِ	of exquisite form	بَدِيعَةُ ٱلْهَيْئَةِ
of light burden	خَفِيفُ ٱلْحِمْلِ	sociable	مُحِبُّ ٱلْعِشْرَةِ

The dropping of the ن in dual and plural.

Plural.		*Dual.*	
the sons of men	بَنُو ٱلْبَشَرِ	his eyes	عَيْنَاهُ
the boat's crew	مَلَّاحُو ٱلْقَارِبِ	in my eyes	فِي عَيْنَيَّ

Plural.		*Dual.*	
the workers of iniquity	فَاعِلُو ٱلْإِثْمِ	before your eyes	قُدَّامَ عَيْنَيْكَ
the days of our years	أَيَّامُ سِنِينَا	at his feet	عِنْدَ رِجْلَيْهِ
all who wait for thee	كُلُّ مُنْتَظِرِيكَ	the works of thy hands	أَعْمَالُ يَدَيْكَ

PREPOSITIONS WITH NOUNS أَلْجَارُّ وَٱلْمَجْرُورُ

The preposition governs the genitive case.

When the preposition لِ is affixed to the article the ا of the latter is dropped, as أَلرَّجُلُ the man لِلرَّجُلِ to the man.

in an hour	فِي سَاعَةٍ	in the west	فِي ٱلْغَرْبِ
upon the wall	عَلَى ٱلْحَائِطِ	in the chair	عَلَى ٱلْكُرْسِيِّ
on the left	عَنِ ٱلْيَسَارِ	on the left	عَنِ ٱلشِّمَالِ
to the door	إِلَى ٱلْبَابِ	to the market	إِلَى ٱلسُّوقِ
from the town	مِنَ ٱلْبَلَدِ	from England	مِنْ إِنْكِلْتِرَا
for a napoleon	بِلِيرَا	for a majedie	بِمَجِيدِيٍّ
the owner's	لِلصَّاحِبِ	Zaid's	لِزَيْدٍ
from everlasting	مُنْذُ ٱلْأَزَلِ	from childhood	مُنْذُ ٱلطُّفُولِيَّةِ

See sentences on the preposition in Part Third.

NOUNS IN CONSTRUCTION GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

in the house of kings	فِي بُيُوتِ ٱلْمُلُوكِ	upon the sea-shore	عَلَى شَاطِئِ ٱلْبَحْرِ
in the twinkling of an eye	فِي لَحْظَةِ عَيْنٍ	from the rising of the sun	مِنْ مَشْرِقِ ٱلشَّمْسِ
for the healing of the body	لِشِفَاءِ ٱلْجَسَدِ	in the current of water	فِي مَجْرَى ٱلْمَاءِ

in every direction	فِي كُلِّ جِهَةٍ	in the midst of the place	فِي وَسَطِ ٱلْمَحَلِّ
with all publicity	بِكُلِّ مُجَاهَرَةٍ	with all my heart	بِكُلِّ قَلْبِي

NOUNS WITH A QUALIFYING ADJECTIVE GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

upon the high mountains	عَلَى ٱلْجِبَالِ ٱلشَّاهِقَةِ	in another way	فِي طَرِيقٍ أُخْرَى
in a special manner	فِي طَرِيقٍ خُصُوصِيَّةٍ	in the twentieth century	فِي ٱلْقَرْنِ ٱلْعِشْرِينَ
in the sixth month	فِي ٱلشَّهْرِ ٱلسَّادِسِ	in one day	فِي يَوْمٍ وَاحِدٍ
from current events	مِنَ ٱلْحَوَادِثِ ٱلْجَارِيَةِ	in a beautiful room	فِي غُرْفَةٍ جَمِيلَةٍ

An adjective may qualify the first or second of two nouns in construction. In both cases the adjective comes after the compound expression and agrees with the noun in being definite or indefinite.

his other hand	يَدُهُ ٱلأُخْرَى
my own will	إِرَادَتِي ٱلْخَاصَّةُ
thy common duties	وَاجِبَاتُكَ ٱلْعُمُومِيَّةُ
my sincere friend	صَدِيقِي ٱلْمُخْلِصُ
his exalted position	مَرْكَزُهُ ٱلسَّامِي
his personal inclinations	عَوَاطِفُهُ ٱلشَّخْصِيَّةُ
a new line of thought	أُسْلُوبُ فِكْرٍ جَدِيدٌ
a boy's noble countenance	وَجْهُ صَبِيٍّ شَرِيفٌ
fountains of living water	أَنْهَارُ مَاءٍ حَيٍّ
our age, the present	عَصْرُنَا ٱلْحَاضِرُ

the golden setting of the sun	غُرُوبُ ٱلشَّمْسِ ٱلذَّهَبِيُّ
a period of successive days	مُدَّةُ أَيَّامٍ مُتَوَالِيَةٍ
the distinguishing features of the face	تَقَاطِيعُ ٱلْوَجْهِ ٱلْمُمَيِّزَةُ
a bundle of new periodicals	رُزْمَةُ جَرَائِدَ جَدِيدَةٍ
the first days of the year	أَيَّامُ ٱلسَّنَةِ ٱلْأُولَى
a long day's march	مَسِيرَةُ يَوْمٍ طَوِيلٍ
the common blessings of life	بَرَكَاتُ ٱلْحَيَاةِ ٱلِاعْتِيَادِيَّةُ

COMPOUND PREPOSITIONS.

from the presence of	مِنْ قِبَلِ	from below	مِنْ تَحْتُ	from above	مِنْ فَوْقُ
to the front	إِلَى ٱلْأَمَامِ	backwards	إِلَى خَلْفٍ	after	مِنْ بَعْدُ
from around	مِنْ حَوْلِ	to the bottom	إِلَى ٱلْأَسْفَلِ	from before	مِنْ قُدَّامِ
until now	إِلَى ٱلْآنَ	henceforth	مِنَ ٱلْآنَ	from behind	مِنْ وَرَاءِ
from here	مِنْ هُنَا	from among	مِنْ بَيْنِ	from behind	مِنْ خَلْفِ
from whence	مِنْ أَيْنَ	here	إِلَى هُنَا	from thence	مِنْ هُنَاكَ
how long	حَتَّى مَتَى	until when	إِلَى مَتَى	whither	إِلَى أَيْنَ
for ever	إِلَى ٱلْأَبَدِ	from the presence of	مِنْ عِنْدِ		

THE COMMON PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE.

altogether	بِٱلْكُلِّيَّةِ	immediately	فِي ٱلْحَالِ
in consequence	بِٱلنَّتِيجَةِ	in fact	فِي ٱلْوَاقِعِ
apart	عَلَى ٱنْفِرَادٍ	generally	فِي ٱلْغَالِبِ

English	Arabic
universally	عَلَى ٱلْإِطْلَاقِ
on condition of	عَلَى شَرْطِ
especially	عَلَى ٱلْخُصُوصِ
at the least	عَلَى ٱلْأَقَلِّ
at your ease	عَلَى مَهْلِكَ
as you wish	عَلَى خَاطِرِكَ
at his expense	عَلَى نَفَقَتِهِ
on my account	عَلَى حِسَابِي
in respect of	مِنْ جِهَةِ
on my oath	عَلَى ذِمَّتِي
thus far	لِحَدِّ ٱلْآنَ
in this respect	مِنْ هٰذَا ٱلْقَبِيلِ
by all means	عَلَى كُلِّ حَالٍ
by way of permission	عَلَى سَبِيلِ ٱلْإِذْنِ
according to his ability	عَلَى قَدْرِ طَاقَتِهِ
on some occasions	فِي بَعْضِ ٱلْأَحْيَانِ
in the meanwhile	فِي أَثْنَاءِ ذٰلِكَ
in the early part of the evening	فِي أَوَّلِ ٱللَّيْلِ
out of place	فِي غَيْرِ مَحَلِّهِ
in fact, of a truth	فِي ٱلْحَقِيقَةِ
by all means	مِنْ كُلِّ بُدٍّ
on account of this	مِنْ أَجْلِ هٰذَا

English	Arabic
by the agency of	عَلَى يَدِ
at your request	عَنْ أَمْرِكَ
et cetera	إِلَى آخِرِهِ
and so on	إِلَى غَيْرِ ذٰلِكَ
by favour of	مِنْ فَضْلِ
by chance	بِٱلصُّدْفَةِ
as much as	بِقَدْرِ مَا
by means of	بِوَاسِطَةِ
in detail	بِٱلتَّفْصِيلِ
on the contrary	بِٱلْعَكْسِ
in short	بِٱلْجُمْلَةِ
unexpectedly	عَلَى حِينِ غَفْلَةٍ
according to his custom	عَلَى عَادَتِهِ
on the same level	عَلَى حَدٍّ سَوَاءٍ
in a brief manner	عَلَى سَبِيلِ ٱلِاخْتِصَارِ
contrary to rule	عَلَى خِلَافِ ٱلْقَانُونِ
in perfect accord	عَلَى غَايَةِ ٱلِاتِّفَاقِ
in this state	عَلَى هٰذَا ٱلْحَالِ
according to the demand	عَلَى حَسَبِ ٱلْمَطْلُوبِ
with due respect	بِمَزِيدِ ٱلِاحْتِرَامِ
with eager longing	بِشَوْقٍ شَدِيدٍ
according to the conditions	بِحَسَبِ ٱلظُّرُوفِ

with all regret	بِكُلِّ أَسَفٍ	with perfect ease	بِكُلِّ سُهُولَةٍ
with regard to	بِٱلنَّظَرِ إِلَى	contrary to that	بِخِلَافِ ذَٰلِكَ
unfortunately	لِسُوءِ ٱلْحَظِّ	in a general way	بِوَجْهِ ٱلْعُمُومِ
as much as possible	بِقَدْرِ ٱلْإِمْكَانِ	as you think best	عَلَى ٱسْتِحْسَانِكَ
in relation to	بِٱلنِّسْبَةِ إِلَى	with a good will	بِطِيبَةِ خَاطِرٍ
in proportion to	بِٱلْقِيَاسِ إِلَى	in the highest degree	لِآخِرِ دَرَجَةٍ
without excuse	لِغَيْرِ عُذْرٍ	without regard to	بِقَطْعِ ٱلنَّظَرِ عَنْ

PART SECOND.

THE SENTENCE أَلْجُمْلَةُ.

The sentence in Arabic is of two kinds, nominal and verbal.

It is called a nominal or noun sentence when it begins with a noun, a verbal sentence when it begins with a verb.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

THE NOMINAL SENTENCE أَلْجُمْلَةُ ٱلإِسْمِيَّةُ.

The subject of a nominal sentence is definite and precedes the predicate.

The predicate is indefinite and may be *(a)* a noun, *(b)* a prepositional or adverbial phrase, *(c)* a sentence: nominal or verbal.

The copula *is, are,* etc., is not expressed. When emphasis is required, the pronoun of the third person is used.

SENTENCES IN WHICH THE PREDICATE IS A NOUN IN THE SINGULAR, DUAL, OR PLURAL.

The cistern is full	أَلْبِئْرُ مَلْآنَةٌ	The entrance is dark	أَلْمَدْخَلُ مُظْلِمٌ
The well is deep	أَلْيَنْبُوعُ عَمِيقٌ	The weather is bad	أَلطَّقْسُ رَدِيءٌ
The sea is rough	أَلْبَحْرُ هَائِجٌ	The air is cold	أَلْهَوَاءُ بَارِدٌ
The sky is overcast	أَلْجَلَدُ مُغَيِّمٌ	Brass is a metal	أَلنُّحَاسُ مَعْدِنٌ
The atmosphere is clear	أَلْجَوُّ صَافٍ	The oven is hot	أَلْفُرْنُ حَامٍ
Sleep is refreshing	أَلنَّوْمُ مُنْعِشٌ	The price is high	أَلثَّمَنُ عَالٍ
The day is wintry	أَلْيَوْمُ شِتَائِيٌّ	The kingdom is rich	أَلْمَمْلَكَةُ غَنِيَّةٌ
The passage is narrow	أَلْمَمَرُّ ضَيِّقٌ	The drawer is locked	أَلْجَرَّارُ مُقْفَلٌ
Water is transparent	أَلْمَاءُ شَفَّافٌ	Glass is brittle	أَلزُّجَاجُ قَصِمٌ
The place is distant	أَلْمَحَلُّ بَعِيدٌ	The vault is firm	أَلْعَقْدُ مَتِينٌ

English	Arabic
The stone is hewn	أَلْحَجَرُ مَنْحُوتٌ
The key is lost	أَلْمِفْتَاحُ مَفْقُودٌ
The coward is despised	أَلْجَبَانُ مُحْتَقَرٌ
Drunkenness is despicable	أَلسُّكْرُ مُهِينٌ
Knowledge is useful	أَلْعِلْمُ نَافِعٌ
The bridge is short	أَلْجِسْرُ قَصِيرٌ
The couch is high	أَلْمَقْعَدُ عَالٍ
The staircase is circular	أَلدَّرَجُ لَوْلَبِيٌّ
The frame is strong	أَلْبِرْوَازُ قَوِيٌّ
The pavement is clean	أَلْبَلَاطُ نَظِيفٌ
Man is mortal	أَلْإِنْسَانُ مَائِتٌ
Repetition is necessary	أَلتَّكْرَارُ ضَرُورِيٌّ
The garment is folded	أَلثَّوْبُ مَطْوِيٌّ
The vessel is empty	أَلْإِنَاءُ فَارِغٌ
The sun is shining	أَلشَّمْسُ مُشْرِقَةٌ
The harbour is spacious	أَلْمِينَاءُ فَسِيحَةٌ
The arbour is shady	أَلْعَرِيشَةُ ظَلِيلَةٌ
The earth is round	أَلْأَرْضُ مُسْتَدِيرَةٌ
The city is fortified	أَلْمَدِينَةُ حَصِينَةٌ
The fruit is ripe	أَلْأَثْمَارُ نَاضِجَةٌ
The wind is westerly	أَلرِّيحُ غَرْبِيَّةٌ
The garden is lovely	أَلْجُنَيْنَةُ جَمِيلَةٌ
The carpet is Egyptian	أَلْحَصِيرَةُ مِصْرِيَّةٌ
Modesty is becoming	أَلْحِشْمَةُ حَسَنَةٌ
The streets are wide	أَلشَّوَارِعُ وَاسِعَةٌ
Reading is beneficial	أَلْقِرَاءَةُ مُفِيدَةٌ
The room is furnished	أَلْغُرْفَةُ مَفْرُوشَةٌ
Silver is white	أَلْفِضَّةُ بَيْضَاءُ
Blasphemy is sin	أَلتَّجْدِيفُ خَطِيَّةٌ
The gulf is wide	أَلْخَلِيجُ وَاسِعٌ
The knife is sharp	أَلسِّكِّينُ حَادٌّ
The stars are visible	أَلنُّجُومُ مَنْظُورَةٌ
The clouds are dense	أَلسُّحُبُ كَثِيفَةٌ
The night is moonlight	أَللَّيْلَةُ مُقْمِرَةٌ
The children are successful	أَلْأَوْلَادُ نَاجِحُونَ
The men are ill	أَلرِّجَالُ مَرْضَى
The women are travelling	أَلنِّسَاءُ مُسَافِرَاتٌ
The two books are useful	أَلْكِتَابَانِ مُفِيدَانِ
The pillow is new	أَلْمِخَدَّةُ جَدِيدَةٌ
Music is sweet	أَلْمُوسِيقَى حُلْوَةٌ
The times are dangerous	أَلْأَحْوَالُ مُخْطِرَةٌ
The rulers are just	أَلْحُكَّامُ عَادِلُونَ
Cheerfulness is a blessing	أَلْبَشَاشَةُ نِعْمَةٌ
The birds are singing	أَلطُّيُورُ مُغَرِّدَةٌ

English	Arabic
Friendship is a virtue	اَلصَّدَاقَةُ فَضِيلَةٌ
The sun is rising	اَلشَّمْسُ طَالِعَةٌ
The goods are in little demand	اَلْبِضَاعَةُ كَاسِدَةٌ
The wise are happy	اَلْحُكَمَاءُ سَعِيدُونَ
Thought is free	اَلْفِكْرُ حُرٌّ
I am an Englishman	أَنَا إِنْكِلِيزِيٌّ
It is I	أَنَا هُوَ ، هِيَ
We are strangers	نَحْنُ غُرَبَاءُ
You are wrong	أَنْتَ غَلْطَانٌ
You are sitting *(dual)*	أَنْتُمَا جَالِسَانِ
You are strong	أَنْتُمْ أَقْوِيَاءُ
He is rich	هُوَ غَنِيٌّ
They are afraid *(dual)*	هُمَا خَائِفَانِ
They are wise	هُمْ حُكَمَاءُ
I am a teacher *(fem.)*	أَنَا مُعَلِّمَةٌ
We are coming	نَحْنُ آتِيَاتٌ
You are busy *(fem.)*	أَنْتِ مَشْغُولَةٌ
You are pretty *(dual)*	أَنْتُمَا جَمِيلَتَانِ
You are Moslems	أَنْتُنَّ مُسْلِمَاتٌ
She is kind	هِيَ لَطِيفَةٌ
They are hungry *(dual)*	هُمَا جَائِعَتَانِ
They are ready *(fem.)*	هُنَّ مُسْتَعِدَّاتٌ

English	Arabic
He is like his father	هُوَ مِثْلُ أَبِيهِ
He likes me	هُوَ مُحِبٌّ لِي
I am a needy man	أَنَا رَجُلٌ مُحْتَاجٌ
He is of ancient lineage	هُوَ عَرِيقُ النَّسَبِ
He is truthful	هُوَ لِسَانُ الْحَقِّ
This is a proof of that	هَذَا بُرْهَانٌ عَلَى ذَلِكَ
That house is uninhabited	ذَلِكَ الْبَيْتُ غَيْرُ مَسْكُونٍ
That problem is easy	تِلْكَ الْمَسْأَلَةُ سَهْلَةٌ
To-night is full-moon	هَذِهِ اللَّيْلَةُ بَدْرٌ
This is a vital point	هَذِهِ نُقْطَةٌ مُهِمَّةٌ
This is the point of the speech	هَذِهِ نُكْتَةُ الْكَلَامِ
This is more obvious	هَذَا أَكْثَرُ وُضُوحًا
That advice is good	تِلْكَ النَّصِيحَةُ جَيِّدَةٌ
This is the latest fashion	هَذِهِ آخِرُ مُودَةٍ
This is untrue	هَذَا غَيْرُ صَحِيحٍ
This is incumbent on me	هَذَا وَاجِبٌ عَلَيَّ
This expression is clear	هَذِهِ الْعِبَارَةُ فَصِيحَةٌ
That specimen is perfect	تِلْكَ الْعَيِّنَةُ كَامِلَةٌ
This is subject to modification	هَذَا قَابِلُ التَّغْيِيرِ
This is the whole of the story	هَذَا تَفْصِيلُ الْقِصَّةِ
The argument is plain	اَلْحُجَّةُ وَاضِحَةٌ
The story is true	اَلْقِصَّةُ صَحِيحَةٌ

English	Arabic
Amiability is a virtue	أَلْأُنْسُ فَضِيلَةٌ
The wind is southerly	أَلرِّيحُ جَنُوبِيَّةٌ
The work is hard	أَلْعَمَلُ شَاقٌّ
The cupboard is empty	أَلْخِزَانَةُ فَارِغَةٌ
The ground is damp	أَلْأَرْضُ رَطْبَةٌ
Violets are blue	أَلْبَنَفْسَجُ أَزْرَقُ
The man is dead	أَلرَّجُلُ مَيْتٌ
He is of age	هُوَ كَامِلُ ٱلسِّنِّ
The affair is important	أَلْأَمْرُ مُهِمٌّ
Haste is necessary	أَلسُّرْعَةُ ضَرُورِيَّةٌ
The truth is clear	أَلْحَقُّ وَاضِحٌ
The fact is unknown	أَلْحَقِيقَةُ مَجْهُولَةٌ
The corn is ripe	أَلْقَمْحُ مُسْتَوٍ
The climate is agreeable	أَلْمُنَاخُ مُلَائِمٌ
The way is dangerous	أَلطَّرِيقُ مُخْطِرَةٌ
The man is insane	أَلرَّجُلُ مُخْتَلٌّ
He is a friend of mine	هُوَ صَدِيقٌ لِي
He is accustomed to it	هُوَ مُتَعَوِّدٌ عَلَيْهِ
I am obliged to you	أَنَا مَمْنُونٌ لَكَ
He is in need of money	هُوَ مُحْتَاجٌ إِلَى دَرَاهِمَ
He is tired with walking	هُوَ تَعِبٌ مِنَ ٱلْمَشْيِ
We are blamed for it	نَحْنُ مَلُومُونَ عَلَيْهِ
The work is well-done	أَلْعَمَلُ مُحْكَمٌ
It is a fact	هُوَ ٱلْحَقِيقَةُ
That is true	ذَلِكَ صَحِيحٌ
That is expensive	ذَلِكَ غَالٍ
That is like you	ذَلِكَ شَأْنُكَ
These are facts	هَذِهِ حَقَائِقُ
He is light-hearted	هُوَ خَفِيفُ ٱلرُّوحِ
Walking is healthy	أَلْمَشْيُ نَافِعٌ لِلصِّحَّةِ
He is an accomplished man	هُوَ رَجُلٌ فَاضِلٌ
He is pleased with it	هُوَ مُرْتَضٍ بِهِ
He is respected by them	هُوَ مُعْتَبَرٌ عِنْدَهُمْ
He is beloved by all	هُوَ مَحْبُوبٌ عِنْدَ ٱلْجَمِيعِ
I am accustomed to it	أَنَا مُعْتَادٌ عَلَيْهِ
He is angry with him	هُوَ مُغْتَاظٌ مِنْهُ
It is better for you	هُوَ خَيْرٌ لَكَ
It is ten o'clock	أَلسَّاعَةُ عَشَرَةٌ
It is a quarter past ten	أَلسَّاعَةُ عَشَرَةٌ وَرُبْعٌ
It is a quarter to eleven	أَلسَّاعَةُ إِحْدَى عَشَرَةَ إِلَّا رُبْعًا
He is a fluent speaker	هُوَ خَطِيبٌ بَلِيغٌ
That is my duty, not yours	ذَلِكَ عَلَيَّ لَا عَلَيْكَ
These are race distinctions	هَذِهِ فُرُوقٌ جِنْسِيَّةٌ
This is far from desirable	هَذَا ٱلْأَمْرُ بَعِيدُ ٱلْمَرَامِ

Nerves are motor and sensory	أَلْأَعْصَابُ مُحَرِّكَةٌ وَحَسَّاسَةٌ
The city has pleasant surroundings	أَلْمَدِينَةُ مُحَاطَةٌ بِمَنَاظِرَ سَارَّةٍ
Man is exposed to many dangers	أَلْإِنْسَانُ مُعَرَّضٌ لِأَخْطَارٍ كَثِيرَةٍ
She is now free from care (*pl.*)	هِيَ ٱلْآنَ خَالِيَةٌ مِنَ ٱلْهُمُومِ
The affair is far from right	أَلْأَمْرُ بَعِيدٌ عَنِ ٱلصِّحَّةِ
The walls are built of ancient stones	أَلْحِيطَانُ مَبْنِيَّةٌ مِنْ حِجَارَةٍ قَدِيمَةٍ
The beach is covered with pebbles	أَلشَّاطِئُ مُغَطًّى بِحَصًى
The mountain is covered with mist	أَلْجَبَلُ مُحَاطٌ بِضَبَابٍ
Grapes are a delicious fruit	أَلْعِنَبُ فَاكِهَةٌ لَذِيذَةٌ
Man is a rational being	أَلْإِنْسَانُ حَيَوَانٌ نَاطِقٌ
The patient is at the point of death	أَلْمَرِيضُ مُشْرِفٌ عَلَى ٱلْمَوْتِ
It is a thing unlikely to happen	هُوَ أَمْرٌ بَعِيدٌ عَنِ ٱلْوُقُوعِ
I am free from this charge	أَنَا بَرَاءٌ مِنْ هٰذِهِ ٱلتُّهْمَةِ
This is the dearest thing to me	هٰذَا أَحَبُّ شَيْءٍ إِلَيَّ
That is an impossible undertaking	ذَلِكَ ٱلْمَشْرُوعُ فَوْقَ حَدِّ ٱلْإِمْكَانِ
He is perplexed about his affairs (*sing.*)	هُوَ حَائِرٌ فِي أَمْرِهِ
You are free to speak	أَنْتَ حُرٌّ فِي مَجَالِ ٱلْقَوْلِ
The affair has more in it than that	أَلْأَمْرُ أَبْعَدُ مِنْ ذَاكَ
Avarice is the root of all evil	أَلطَّمَعُ أَصْلُ كُلِّ شَرٍّ
This coin is counterfeit	هٰذِهِ ٱلْعُمْلَةُ مُزَيَّفَةٌ
This vessel is porous	هٰذَا ٱلْإِنَاءُ ذُو مَسَامٍّ
Man is a sociable being	أَلْإِنْسَانُ كَائِنٌ أَنِيسٌ

The bee is the symbol of industry	ألنحلة مثال الجد
Patience brings (key) relief	ألصبر مفتاح الفرج
I am content with what I have	أنا مكتفٍ بما عندي
He is not pleased with it	هو غير مسرور به
She is ready to travel	هي مستعدة للرحيل
Virtue is everlasting wealth	ألفضيلة ثروة أبدية
She is twelve years old	هي في الثانية عشرة من عمرها
His time is of little worth	ألوقت غير ثمين عنده
Lying is a hateful vice	ألكذب رذيلة مكروهة
Justice is a noble quality	ألعدل صفة شريفة
It is a testimonial to his character	هو شهادة لأخلاقه
In the summer the nights are short	أللياليِ في الصيف قصيرة
Life is full of blessings	ألحياة ملآنة من البركات
Either this or that is false	إما هذا وإما ذاك كذب
He is sixteen years of age	هو في السادسة عشرة من عمره
The coast is the land which borders the sea	ألشاطئ هو الأرض المتصلة بالبحر
Discretion is the better part of valour	ألفطنة هي الجزء الأعظم في الشجاعة
The leopard is famous for courage, strength, and ferocity	ألنمر مشهور بالشجاعة والقوة والتوحش
Vegetation within the tropics is very luxuriant	ألنباتات في المناطق الحارة خصبة جدا
A white flag is a symbol of peace	ألعلم الأبيض كناية عن السلام
The days are long and the nights are hot	ألأيام طويلة والليالي حارة
I am tired of this treatment	أنا متعب من هذه المعاملة

It is an emblem of righteousness	هِيَ عَلَامَةٌ عَلَى ٱلْبِرِّ
Virtue is its own reward	أَلْفَضِيلَةُ ثَوَابٌ لِنَفْسِهَا
True friendship is eternal	أَلْأُلْفَةُ ٱلصَّادِقَةُ خَالِدَةٌ
Character is better than inheritance	أَلْأَدَبُ خَيْرُ مِيرَاثٍ
He is a worthy son of a worthy father	هُوَ خَيْرُ ٱبْنٍ لِخَيْرِ أَبٍ
This chapter has five heads	هٰذَا ٱلْفَصْلُ خَمْسَةُ أَبْوَابٍ
Well-begun is half-done	أَلْبِدَايَةُ ٱلْحَسَنَةُ نِصْفُ ٱلْعَمَلِ
The nation is altogether prosperous	أَلْأُمَّةُ بِأَسْرِهَا مُوَفَّقَةٌ
What are the subjects for study?	مَا هِيَ مَوَاضِيعُ ٱلدَّرْسِ
The fact is known to us	أَلْحَقِيقَةُ مَعْرُوفَةٌ عِنْدَنَا
He is of a humane disposition	هُوَ دَمِثُ ٱلْأَخْلَاقِ
The elephant is a docile creature	أَلْفِيلُ قَابِلُ ٱلتَّعَلُّمِ
The mountains are white with snow	أَلْجِبَالُ مُبْيَضَّةٌ بِٱلثَّلْجِ
The shoe is too narrow for the foot	أَلْحِذَاءُ ضَيِّقٌ عَلَى ٱلرِّجْلِ
The way is too narrow	أَلطَّرِيقُ ضَيِّقَةٌ بِزِيَادَةٍ
The subject is worthy of our deliberations	أَلْمَوْضُوعُ مُسْتَحِقٌّ تَأَمُّلَاتِنَا
He is expert at his trade	هُوَ مَاهِرٌ فِي تِجَارَتِهِ
He is deservedly successful	هُوَ نَاجِحٌ عَنِ ٱسْتِحْقَاقٍ
He is very fond of that	هُوَ شَدِيدُ ٱلْوَلَعِ بِذٰلِكَ
It is an unintentional slip	هِيَ زَلَّةٌ عَنْ غَيْرِ عَمْدٍ
He is a famous brigand chieftain	هُوَ رَئِيسُ حَرَامِيَّةٍ مَشْهُورٌ
He is a man of good report	هُوَ رَجُلٌ مَشْهُودٌ لَهُ

To err is human, to forgive divine	أَلْخَطَأُ بَشَرِيٌّ وَٱلْمَغْفِرَةُ إِلٰهِيَّةٌ
The youth is under the guidance of his guardian	أَلشَّابُّ تَحْتَ إِرْشَادِ وَصِيِّهِ
The azure sky is streaked with red	أَلْجَلَدُ ٱلْأَزْرَقُ مُخَطَّطٌ بِٱلِاحْمِرَارِ
We admire the deeds of these men	نَحْنُ مُعْجَبُونَ بِأَعْمَالِ هٰؤُلَاءِ ٱلرِّجَالِ
It is easier to walk than ride	أَلْمَشْيُ أَسْهَلُ عَلَيْنَا مِنَ ٱلرُّكُوبِ
These troubles are hard to bear	هٰذِهِ ٱلْمَشَقَّاتُ صَعْبَةُ ٱلِاحْتِمَالِ
That engraving is much prized	ذَلِكَ ٱلنَّقْشُ مُعْتَبَرٌ جِدًّا
The rose is the queen of flowers	أَلْوَرْدُ مَلِكُ ٱلزُّهُورِ
The difference in your ages is small	أَلْفَرْقُ فِي أَعْمَارِكُمْ قَلِيلٌ
It is far from his real nature	هُوَ بَعِيدٌ عَنْ طَبِيعَتِهِ ٱلْحَقِيقِيَّةِ
The noble soul is strong	أَلنَّفْسُ ٱلشَّرِيفَةُ قَوِيَّةٌ
Sweet sleep is refreshing	أَلنَّوْمُ ٱلْهَنِيءُ مُنْعِشٌ
The East is famous for hospitality	أَلشَّرْقُ مَشْهُورٌ بِٱلضِّيَافَةِ
He lives opposite to me	هُوَ مُقِيمٌ مُقَابِلِي
It is exactly so	أَلْأَمْرُ هٰكَذَا تَمَامًا
The fort is an ancient erection	أَلْحِصْنُ بِنَاءٌ قَدِيمٌ
That is not improbable	ذَلِكَ غَيْرُ بَعِيدٍ
Truth is a sharp sword	أَلْحَقُّ سَيْفٌ قَاطِعٌ
Piety is the best provision for a journey	أَلتَّقْوَى خَيْرُ زَادٍ
Mercy is a twofold blessing	أَلرَّحْمَةُ بَرَكَةٌ مُضَاعَفَةٌ
Language adorns the meaning	أَللَّفْظُ زِينَةُ ٱلْمَعْنَى
Man is measured by what he is	أَلْمَرْءُ ٱبْنُ ٱلْيَوْمِ

The discipline is defective	أَلتَّدْرِيبُ غَيْرُ كَامِلٍ
This is his custom	هٰذِهِ عَادَتُهُ
It is alien to my nature	هُوَ ضِدُّ طِبَاعِي
He is open-handed	هُوَ سَخِيُّ ٱلْكَفِّ
He is liberal-minded	هُوَ رَحْبُ ٱلصَّدْرِ
He is of a smiling countenance	هُوَ بَشُوشُ ٱلْوَجْهِ
Excess is akin to defect (extremes meet)	أَلزَّائِدُ أَخُو ٱلنَّاقِصِ
Speech is characteristic of the speaker	أَلْكَلَامُ صِفَةُ ٱلْمُتَكَلِّمِ
Forgiveness is the greatest victory	أَلْمَغْفِرَةُ أَشْرَفُ غَلَبَةٍ
Truth appears on investigation	أَلْحَقِيقَةُ بِنْتُ ٱلْبَحْثِ
Stolen waters are sweet	أَلْمِيَاهُ ٱلْمَسْرُوقَةُ حُلْوَةٌ
Youth is the flower of life	أَلشَّبَابُ زَهْرَةُ ٱلْحَيَاةِ
Man is subject to forgetfulness	أَلْإِنْسَانُ مَوْضِعُ ٱلنِّسْيَانِ
Birth is the messenger of death	أَلْوِلَادَةُ رَسُولُ ٱلْمَوْتِ
Necessity is the mother of invention	أَلْحَاجَةُ أُمُّ ٱلِاخْتِرَاعِ
He is two-faced and double-tongued	هُوَ ذُو وَجْهَيْنِ وَلِسَانَيْنِ
Vice is its own punishment	أَلرَّذِيلَةُ عِقَابٌ لِنَفْسِهَا
The place of sweet water is much frequented	أَلْمَوْرِدُ ٱلْعَذْبُ كَثِيرُ ٱلْوُرُودِ
He who exceeds the limit and he who falls short of it are alike	أَلْمُتَجَاوِزُ ٱلْحَدِّ وَٱلْمُقَصِّرُ عَنْهُ سِيَّانِ
The one-eyed is a king among the blind	أَلْأَعْوَرُ بَيْنَ ٱلْعُمْيَانِ مَلِكٌ

Words for practice :—

wall	حَائِطٌ حِيطَانٌ	courage	شَجَاعَةٌ
virtue	فَضِيلَةٌ فَضَائِلُ	autumn	خَرِيفٌ
current	مَجْرًى	strong	قَوِيٌّ أَقْوِيَاءُ
fortification	حِصْنٌ حُصُونٌ	impregnable	مَنِيعٌ
large	كَبِيرٌ	lovely	جَمِيلٌ
beneficial	مُفِيدٌ	wide	وَاسِعٌ
white	أَبْيَضُ	green	أَخْضَرُ
high	عَالٍ	busy	مَشْغُولٌ
house	بَيْتٌ بُيُوتٌ	day	يَوْمٌ أَيَّامٌ
travel	سَفَرٌ أَسْفَارٌ	river	نَهْرٌ أَنْهَارٌ
snow	ثَلْجٌ ثُلُوجٌ	sea	بَحْرٌ بِحَارٌ

workman فَاعِلٌ فَعَلَةٌ.

Translate :—The house is large. The day is lovely. Travel is beneficial. The river is wide. Silence is golden. Life is short. Snow is white. The sea is green. The walls are high. Courage is a virtue. Autumn is lovely. The current is strong. The workmen are busy. The fortification is impregnable.

Words for practice :—

trough	حَوْضٌ أَحْوَاضٌ	full	مَلْآنُ
weather	طَقْسٌ	new	جَدِيدٌ جُدُدٌ
messenger	رَسُولٌ رُسُلٌ	here	هُنَا
lion	أَسَدٌ أُسْدٌ	guilty	مُذْنِبٌ
near	قَرِيبٌ	necessary	ضَرُورِيٌّ

slow	بَطِيءٌ	horse	حِصَانٌ حُصُنٌ
broken	مَكْسُورٌ	open	مَفْتُوحٌ
chair	كُرْسِيٌّ كَرَاسِيُّ	prisoner	مَسْجُونٌ
economy	إِقْتِصَادٌ	death	مَوْتٌ
coward	جَبَانٌ	pen	قَلَمٌ أَقْلَامٌ
door	بَابٌ أَبْوَابٌ	stick	عَصًا عِصِيٌّ
	oak	بَلُّوطٌ	

Translate :—The prisoners are guilty. Death is near. Economy is necessary. The trough is full. The weather is fine. You are slow. This is new. He is a coward. The horses are strong. The pen is broken. The messenger is here. The door is open. That is the man. The lion is strong. This is my stick. The chair is made of oak.

THE SUBJECT A NOUN IN CONSTRUCTION.

An indefinite noun when in construction becomes definite.

Her disposition is kind	أَخْلَاقُهَا لَطِيفَةٌ
Your saying is foolish	قَوْلُكَ جَهَالَةٌ
His family is large	عَائِلَتُهُ كَبِيرَةٌ
His friendship is sincere	صَدَاقَتُهُ مُخْلِصَةٌ
Our age is the same	عُمْرُنَا وَاحِدٌ
My uncle is my guest	عَمِّي نَزِيلِي
His inclinations are noble	عَوَاطِفُهُ شَرِيفَةٌ
His evidence is convincing	دَلِيلُهُ سَاطِعٌ
Your watch is fast	سَاعَتُكَ مُقَدِّمَةٌ

My watch is slow	سَاعَتِي مُقَصِّرَةٌ
His defence is weak	حُجَّتُهُ وَاهِيَةٌ
His coat is torn	جُبَّتُهُ مُمَزَّقَةٌ
The plain is about two miles broad	عَرْضُ ٱلسَّهْلِ نَحْوُ مِيلَيْنِ
His coming is doubtful	مَجِيئُهُ مَشْكُوكٌ فِيهِ
An island is a piece of land surrounded by water	قِطْعَةُ أَرْضٍ مُحَاطَةٌ بِمَاءٍ جَزِيرَةٌ
All the lineaments of the face are well-marked	كُلُّ تَقَاطِيعِ ٱلْوَجْهِ مَرْسُومَةٌ جَيِّدًا
The pleasantest days are the shortest	أَلَذُّ ٱلْأَيَّامِ أَقْصَرُهَا
How to do this is difficult	كَيْفِيَّةُ عَمَلِ هٰذَا صَعْبَةٌ
The conditions of peace are uncertain	شُرُوطُ ٱلصُّلْحِ غَيْرُ مُؤَكَّدَةٍ
The healing of the sick is a divine work	شِفَاءُ ٱلْمَرْضَى عَمَلٌ إِلٰهِيٌّ
His intellectual power is limited	قُوَّتُهُ ٱلْعَقْلِيَّةُ قَاصِرَةٌ
Prejudice is the bane of thought	آفَةُ ٱلرَّأْيِ ٱلْهَوَى
The reason of his coming is plain	سَبَبُ مَجِيئِهِ وَاضِحٌ
The depth of the well is ten feet	عُمْقُ ٱلْبِئْرِ عَشَرَةُ أَقْدَامٍ
His office is Minister of Instruction	وَظِيفَتُهُ مُفَتِّشُ ٱلْمَعَارِفِ
The eye is the organ of sight	آلَةُ ٱلنَّظَرِ ٱلْعَيْنُ
Every hundred years is a century	كُلُّ مِائَةِ سَنَةٍ قَرْنٌ
Every twelve months is a year	كُلُّ ٱثْنَيْ عَشَرَ شَهْرًا سَنَةٌ
Every twenty-four hours is a day	كُلُّ أَرْبَعٍ وَعِشْرِينَ سَاعَةً يَوْمٌ
His speech bears two interpretations	كَلَامُهُ ذُو وَجْهَيْنِ
His portrait hangs on the wall	صُورَتُهُ مُعَلَّقَةٌ عَلَى ٱلْحَائِطِ

The shadow of the earth is round	ظِلُّ ٱلْأَرْضِ مُسْتَدِيرٌ
Everyone is liable to err	كُلُّ وَاحِدٍ مُعَرَّضٌ لِلْخَطَإِ
The functions of the skin are manifold	وَظَائِفُ ٱلْجِلْدِ مُتَنَوِّعَةٌ
Your treatise is composed with masterly skill	مَقَالَتُكَ مُؤَلَّفَةٌ بِبَرَاعَةٍ كُلِّيَّةٍ
The singer's voice is sweet	صَوْتُ ٱلْمُرَنِّمِ حُلْوٌ
The truth of that story is sure	صِدْقُ تِلْكَ ٱلْقِصَّةِ أَكِيدٌ
Every beginning is difficult	بِدَايَةُ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ صَعْبَةٌ
The end of the day is near	نِهَايَةُ ٱلنَّهَارِ قَرِيبَةٌ
The leaves of the tree are green	أَوْرَاقُ ٱلشَّجَرَةِ خَضْرَاءُ
England's power is very great	قُوَّةُ إِنْكِلْتِرَّا عَظِيمَةٌ جِدًّا
Why do you need to know it?	أَيَّةُ حَاجَةٍ لَكَ فِي عِرْفَانِهِ
The origin of the quarrel is unknown	أَصْلُ ٱلْمُخَاصَمَةِ غَيْرُ مَعْرُوفٍ
The taste of the wine is sour	طَعْمُ ٱلْخَمْرِ حَامِضٌ
The execution of this picture is exquisite	تَكْوِينُ هٰذِهِ ٱلصُّورَةِ بَدِيعٌ لِلْغَايَةِ
They all resemble one another	كُلُّهُمْ مُتَشَابِهُونَ
The labourer's wage is small	أُجْرَةُ ٱلْفَاعِلِ قَلِيلَةٌ
Your advice is valuable	نَصِيحَتُكَ ثَمِينَةٌ
The design of the building is fine	رَسْمُ ٱلْبِنَاءِ جَمِيلٌ
Its taste is somewhat sweet	طَعْمُهُ لَذِيذٌ نَوْعًا
The last remedy is death	آخِرُ ٱلدَّوَاءِ ٱلْأَجَلُ
Work is the criterion of age	طُولُ ٱلْعُمْرِ ٱلْعَمَلُ
Slander is the bane of love	آفَةُ ٱلْمَوَدَّةِ ٱلنَّمِيمَةُ

Diligence is the road to wealth	طريق الثروة اجتهاد
Virtue is the road to happiness	طريق السعادة الفضيلة
Agreement is the condition of companionship	شرط المرافقة الموافقة
The middle course is the best	خير الامور الوسط
Patience is the remedy of the age	دواء الدهر الصبر
All that is forbidden is followed after	كل ممنوع متبوع
All that is hidden is sought after	كل محجوب مطلوب
Love is blind	عين المحب عمياء
The best warfare is the soul's	جهاد النفس افضل جهاد
The child of to-day is the youth of to-morrow	ولد اليوم هو شاب الغد
The keeping of a secret is the soul of morality	رأس الادب حفظ السر
Every soul tastes of death	كل نفس ذائقة الموت
The promise of the honourable is a debt	وعد الكريم دين
The promise of the base is postponement	وعد اللئيم تسويف
The rope of lying is short	حبل الكذب قصير
Goodness of disposition is the best companion	حسن الخلق خير قرين
Invective is the weapon of the base	سلاح اللئام قبح الكلام
Length of days is in well-doing	طول العمر بحسن العمل
Every maiden admires her father	كل فتاة بابيها معجبة

Words for practice :—

overflow	متدفق	instrument	آلة آلات
smell	شم	nose	أنف آنوف

ear	أُذُنٌ آذَانٌ	hand	يَدٌ أَيْدٍ
tongue	لِسَانٌ أَلْسُنٌ	throat	حَلْقٌ
trial	إِمْتِحَانٌ ات	pupil, disciple	تِلْمِيذٌ تَلَامِيذُ
fountain	عَيْنٌ عُيُونٌ	sweet	حُلْوٌ
taste	طَعْمٌ	honey	عَسَلٌ
special	خَاصٌّ	number	عَدَدٌ أَعْدَادٌ
ship	سَفِينَةٌ سُفُنٌ	silk	حَرِيرٌ
evil	شَرٌّ شُرُورٌ	freedom	حُرِّيَّةٌ
grapes	عِنَبٌ	pleasant	لَذِيذٌ
both	كِلَاهُمَا	famous	مَشْهُورٌ
courage	بَسَالَةٌ	touch	لَمْسٌ
distance	مَسَافَةٌ ات	dark	أَسْوَدُ
cloak	عَبَاءَةٌ	England	إِنْكِلْتِرَا

Translate :—

أَكْلُ ٱلْعِنَبِ لَذِيذٌ . كِلَاهُمَا مَشْهُورَانِ بِٱلْبَسَالَةِ . مَاءُ ٱلْعَيْنِ عَذْبٌ . طَعْمُ ٱلْعَسَلِ حُلْوٌ . مِيَاهُهُ مُتَدَفِّقَةٌ . آلَةُ ٱلشَّمِّ ٱلْأَنْفُ . آلَةُ ٱلسَّمْعِ ٱلْأُذُنُ . آلَةُ ٱللَّمْسِ ٱلْخَاصَّةُ ٱلْيَدُ . آلَةُ ٱلذَّوْقِ ٱللِّسَانُ وَٱلْحَلْقُ . أَلْمَسَافَةُ بَيْنَهُمْ كَبِيرَةٌ . عَيْنَاهُ سَوْدَاوَانِ . حَيَاتُنَا قَصِيرَةٌ . عَدَدُ ٱلتَّلَامِيذِ قَلِيلٌ . عَدَدُ تِلْكَ ٱلسُّفُنِ عَظِيمٌ . أَلْحَيَاةُ زَمَنُ ٱمْتِحَانٍ . تِلْكَ ٱلْعَبَاءَةُ مَصْنُوعَةٌ مِنْ حَرِيرٍ . إِنْكِلْتِرَا بِلَادُ ٱلْحُرِّيَّةِ . قَلِيلُ ٱلشَّرِّ كَثِيرٌ

Words for Practice :—

graves	قَبْرٌ قُبُورٌ	green	أَخْضَرُ خُضْرٌ
clothes	ثَوْبٌ أَثْوَابٌ	child	وَلَدٌ أَوْلَادٌ
twenty	عِشْرُونَ	length	طُولٌ
broken	مُنْكَسِرٌ	patience	صَبْرٌ
cold	بَارِدٌ	heart	قَلْبٌ قُلُوبٌ
fixed	ثَابِتٌ	clean	نَظِيفٌ
new	جَدِيدٌ جُدُدٌ	small	قَلِيلٌ ون
beautiful	جَمِيلٌ	wonderful	عَجِيبٌ
country (*fem.*)	بِلَادٌ	desolate	خَرِبٌ
foot	قَدَمٌ أَقْدَامٌ	unknown	غَيْرُ مَعْرُوفٍ
room	غُرْفَةٌ غُرَفٌ	labourer	فَاعِلٌ فَعَلَةٌ
wounded	مَجْرُوحٌ	power	قُوَّةٌ قُوًى

Translate :—Our country is desolate. My feet are cold. His heart is fixed. Their graves are green. The children's clothes are clean. The grave of Moses is unknown. The boy's book is new. The room is twenty feet long. The new labourer's pay is small. His horse is wounded. His patience is wonderful. Her dog is beautiful. Their hearts are broken. Their power is wonderful.

Words for Practice :—

general	جِنْرَالٌ ات	sad	مَحْزُونٌ
youth	شَبِيبَةٌ	vain	بَاطِلٌ
often	مِرَارًا	sweet	حُلْوٌ
store-room	بَيْتُ الْمَؤُونَةِ	coloured	مُلَوَّنٌ

common	مُشْتَرَكٌ	anger	غَضَبٌ
sharp	حَادٌّ	keen	شَدِيدٌ أَشِدَّاءُ
countenance, face	وَجْهٌ وُجُوهٌ	bird	عُصْفُورٌ عَصَافِيرُ
salt	مَالِحٌ	glass	زُجَاجٌ
friend	صَدِيقٌ أَصْدِقَاءُ	life	حَيَاةٌ
exile	مَنْفِيٌّ	bitter	مُرٌّ
teeth	سِنٌّ أَسْنَانٌ	singing	تَغْرِيدٌ
water	مَاءٌ مِيَاهٌ	pane	لَوْحٌ أَلْوَاحٌ
	property	مَالٌ أَمْوَالٌ	

Translate:—The life of exiles is bitter. The teeth of the lion are sharp. The anger of the father is keen. The countenance of the general is sad. The hopes of youth are often vain. The singing of the bird is sweet. The water of the sea is salt. The store-room is damp. The panes of glass are coloured. The property of friends is common.

THE PREDICATE A PREPOSITION WITH ITS NOUN OR AN ADVERB.

Variety is charming	اَللَّذَّةُ فِي ٱلتَّنَقُّلِ
You are right	اَلْحَقُّ لَكُمْ
You are wrong	اَلْحَقُّ عَلَيْكُمْ
You are guilty	اَلذَّنْبُ عَلَيْكَ
God be with you	اَللهُ مَعَكُمْ
Praise belongeth unto God	اَلْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ
A friend is for adversity	اَلصَّدِيقُ عِنْدَ ٱلضِّيقِ

Cleanliness is of the faith	اَلنَّظَافَةُ مِنَ ٱلْإِيمَانِ
The journey is to-morrow	اَلسَّفَرُ غَدًا
He is perplexed about his affairs *(sing.)*	هُوَ فِي حَيْرَةٍ مِنْ أَمْرِهِ
This pen is mine	هٰذَا ٱلْقَلَمُ لِي
He is among the wounded	هُوَ مِنَ ٱلْجَرْحَى
He is in danger of death	هُوَ فِي خَطَرِ ٱلْمَوْتِ
The crooked furrow is the work of the big ox	اَلتَّلَمُ ٱلْأَعْوَجُ مِنَ ٱلثَّوْرِ ٱلْكَبِيرِ
He is in easy circumstances	هُوَ فِي سَعَةٍ مِنَ ٱلْعَيْشِ
He is in straitened circumstances	هُوَ فِي حَالٍ ضَيِّقٍ
He is of plebeian stock	هُوَ مِنْ عَامَّةِ ٱلنَّاسِ
He belongs to the nobility	هُوَ مِنْ خَاصَّةِ ٱلنَّاسِ
I am entirely at your disposal	أَنَا تَحْتَ أَمْرِكَ
Man proposes but God disposes	نَحْنُ فِي ٱلتَّفْكِيرِ وَٱللّٰهُ فِي ٱلتَّدْبِيرِ
Enough is as good as a feast	اَلْكِفَايَةُ كَوَلِيمَةٍ
Character makes the man	اَلْإِنْسَانُ بِسَجَايَاهُ
This pearl is without blemish	هٰذِهِ ٱللُّؤْلُؤَةُ بِلَا عَيْبٍ

THE PREDICATE PRECEDING THE SUBJECT.

The subject is indefinite and the predicate an adverbial or prepositional phrase.

I have something to say to you	لِي مَعَكَ كَلَامٌ
We have the same name	لَنَا ٱسْمٌ وَاحِدٌ
There is doubt about it	فِيهِ رَيْبٌ

He is in debt — عَلَيْهِ دَيْنٌ

I have knowledge of it — لِي مَعْرِفَةٌ بِهِ

Repetition is profitable — فِي ٱلْإِعَادَةِ إِفَادَةٌ

What an excellent man — لِلّٰهِ دَرُّهُ

A sharp sword does not always cut — لِكُلِّ صَارِمٍ نَبْوَةٌ

Every good horse has a fall — لِكُلِّ جَوَادٍ كَبْوَةٌ

Every learned man makes a slip — لِكُلِّ عَالِمٍ هَفْوَةٌ

God is wiser than the wisest — فَوْقَ كُلِّ ذِي عِلْمٍ عَلِيمٌ

I am indebted to him — لَهُ عَلَيَّ أَيَادٍ بَيْضَاءُ

With age there is wisdom — عِنْدَ ٱلشَّيْبِ حِكْمَةٌ

All that I have is thine — لَكَ كُلُّ مَا هُوَ لِي

The reins of government are in his hands — بِيَدِهِ زِمَامُ ٱلْمُلْكِ

The book has a useful appendix — لِلْكِتَابِ تَذْيِيلٌ مُفِيدٌ

This saying has another meaning — لِهٰذَا ٱلْقَوْلِ وَجْهٌ آخَرُ

We have space enough for our purpose — لَنَا فُسْحَةٌ كَافِيَةٌ لِقَصْدِنَا

I am beholden to you — لَكَ عَلَيَّ ٱلْفَضْلُ

Unity generally implies strength — فِي ٱلِٱتِّحَادِ غَالِبًا قُوَّةٌ

There is a time for everything — لِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ وَقْتٌ

There are seven days in the week — فِي ٱلْأُسْبُوعِ سَبْعَةُ أَيَّامٍ

Necessity knows no law — لِلضَّرُورَةِ أَحْكَامٌ

I have no time — مَا عِنْدِي وَقْتٌ

You owe me two liras — عَلَيْكَ لِي لِيرَتَانِ

He has money enough and to spare	لَهُ دَرَاهِمُ كَافِيَةٌ وَتَزِيدُ
There is a saying for every occasion	لِكُلِّ مَقَامٍ مَقَالٌ
He has an account against me	لَهُ عَلَيَّ حِسَابٌ
I have what I need	عِنْدِي مَا أَحْتَاجُ
You have the prior claim	لَكَ ٱلْحَقُّ ٱلْأَوَّلُ

Words for practice :—

pupil	تِلْمِيذٌ تَلَامِيذُ	success	نَجَاحٌ	teacher	مُعَلِّمٌ
guard	حُرَّاسٌ	time	أَجَلٌ آجَالٌ	owner	صَاحِبٌ أَصْحَابٌ
straw (chopped)	تِبْنٌ	according	حَسْبَمَا	desire	رَغْبَةٌ
long	طَوِيلٌ	provender	عَلَفٌ	strong	شَدِيدٌ أَشِدَّاءُ
teeth	سِنٌّ أَسْنَانٌ	opportunity	فُرْصَةٌ فُرَصٌ		

Translate :—

مَا فِي ٱلْمَدْرَسَةِ إِلَّا ٱلْمُعَلِّمُ . فِي ٱلْبَيْتِ صَاحِبُهُ . كَيْفَ هِيَ . لِي رَغْبَةٌ شَدِيدَةٌ فِي ٱلنَّجَاحِ . لَهُ أَسْنَانٌ حَادَّةٌ . لِلشَّجَرَةِ أُصُولٌ طَوِيلَةٌ . لِكُلِّ تِلْمِيذٍ قَلَمٌ . عِنْدَكُمْ حُرَّاسٌ . مَا فِي ٱلْمَحَلِّ إِلَّا وَلَدٌ . أَيْنَ كِتَابُكَ . فِي يَدِكَ آجَالِي . لِكُلِّ أُمَّةٍ رَسُولٌ . عَلَيْكَ لِي عَشَرُ لِيرَاتٍ . حَسْبَمَا لَنَا فُرْصَةٌ . عِنْدَنَا تِبْنٌ وَعَلَفٌ .

THE SUBJECT PRECEDING THE PREDICATE.

When (1) both subject and predicate are either definite or indefinite, (2) the predicate is a verb containing a pronoun in the nominative case referrring to the subject, (3) the predicate is restricted by إِنَّمَا or by إِلَّا after the negatives مَا and لَا, (4) the subject expresses interrogation.

God is the creator	أَللّٰهُ ٱلْخَالِقُ
"Precious in the eyes of the Lord is the death of His saints"	عَزِيزٌ فِي عَيْنَيِ ٱلرَّبِّ مَوْتُ أَتْقِيَائِهِ
"I am only a manifest warner"	إِنَّمَا أَنَا نَذِيرٌ مُبِينٌ
"I am only human like you"	إِنَّمَا أَنَا بَشَرٌ مِثْلُكُمْ
"Mahommed is only an apostle"	مَا مُحَمَّدٌ إِلَّا رَسُولٌ
Who is in the house ?	مَنْ فِي ٱلدَّارِ
Whose son is this ?	إِبْنُ مَنْ هٰذَا
Is it true what you say ?	أَحَقٌّ مَا تَقُولُ

THE PREDICATE A VERB.

The horse gallops	أَلْحِصَانُ يَعْدُو	The bird chirps	أَلْعُصْفُورُ يُزَقْزِقُ
The clock ticks	أَلسَّاعَةُ تَدُقُّ	The knife cuts	أَلسِّكِّينُ يَقْطَعُ
The teacher writes	أَلْمُعَلِّمُ يَكْتُبُ	The child cries	أَلْوَلَدُ يَصْرُخُ
The snow melts	أَلثَّلْجُ يَذُوبُ	The trees wave	أَلْأَشْجَارُ تَتَمَوَّجُ
The ravens croak	أَلْغِرْبَانُ تَنْعَبُ	The lark sings	أَلْقُبَّرَةُ تُغَرِّدُ
The corn grows	أَلْقَمْحُ يَنْمُو	The years pass	أَلسِّنُونَ تَمُرُّ
The times change	أَلْأَوْقَاتُ تَتَغَيَّرُ	The man snores	أَلرَّجُلُ يَغِطُّ
The trumpet sounds	أَلْبُوقُ يُصَوِّتُ	The gum exudes	أَلصَّمْغُ يَسِيلُ
The day breaks	أَلنَّهَارُ يَطْلُعُ	Gold glitters	أَلذَّهَبُ يَلْمَعُ
The rain falls	أَلْمَطَرُ يَنْزِلُ	The farmer ploughs	أَلْفَلَّاحُ يَحْرُثُ
The wind blows	أَلرِّيحُ تَهُبُّ	The boat sails	أَلْقَارِبُ يُقْلِعُ
The donkey brays	أَلْحِمَارُ يَنْهَقُ	The horse neighs	أَلْحِصَانُ يَصْهَلُ
The lion roars	أَلْأَسَدُ يُزَمْجِرُ	The fire burns	أَلنَّارُ تَحْتَرِقُ

The birds sing	أَلطُّيُورُ تُغَرِّدُ	The deaf hear	أَلصُّمُّ يَسْمَعُونَ
The lame walk	أَلْعُرْجُ يَمْشُونَ	The blind see	أَلْعُمْيُ يُبْصِرُونَ
The hungry eat	أَلْجِيَاعُ يَأْكُلُونَ	The thunder rattles	أَلرَّعْدُ يَقْصِفُ
The cannons roar	أَلْمَدَافِعُ تَدْوِي	The bell rings	أَلْجَرَسُ يَطِنُّ
The child sleeps	أَلْوَلَدُ يَنَامُ	The water boils	أَلْمَاءُ يَغْلِي
Man thinks	أَلْإِنْسَانُ يَفْتَكِرُ	Flowers fade	أَلزُّهُورُ تَذْبُلُ
The clouds are dense	أَلْغُيُومُ تَتَلَبَّدُ	Truth endures	أَلْحَقُّ يَثْبُتُ
God knows	أَللهُ يَعْلَمُ	Love edifieth	أَلْمَحَبَّةُ تَبْنِي
Law commands	أَلشَّرْعُ يَأْمُرُ	Our side plays	جَمَاعَتُنَا تَلْعَبُ
The pupils learn	أَلطَّلَبَةُ يَتَعَلَّمُونَ	The builders build	أَلْبَنَّاؤُونَ يَبْنُونَ
The war wages	أَلْحَرْبُ تَضْطَرِمُ	The flag waves	أَلْعَلَمُ يَخْفِقُ
Beauty fades	أَلْجَمَالُ يَفْنَى	Snakes bite	أَلْحَيَّاتُ تَلْدَغُ
Rivers flow	أَلْأَنْهَارُ تَجْرِي	Fish swim	أَلسَّمَكُ يَسْبَحُ
The candle burns	أَلشَّمْعَةُ تَحْتَرِقُ	The sun shines	أَلشَّمْسُ تُشْرِقُ
The flowers bloom	أَلزُّهُورُ تُزْهِرُ	The children play	أَلْأَوْلَادُ تَلْعَبُ
Hope remains	أَلرَّجَاءُ يَثْبُتُ	Reptiles creep	أَلزَّحَّافَاتُ تَدِبُّ
Kings reign	أَلْمُلُوكُ يَمْلِكُونَ	Time flies	أَلْوَقْتُ يَطِيرُ
Spring comes	أَلرَّبِيعُ يَأْتِي	Bodies expand by heat	أَلْأَجْسَامُ تَتَمَدَّدُ بِالْحَرَارَةِ

All men praise him	كُلُّ ٱلنَّاسِ يَمْدَحُونَهُ
Iron cuts iron	أَلْحَدِيدُ يَفُلُّ ٱلْحَدِيدَ
Thorns grow apace	أَلشَّوْكُ يَنْمُو حَالًا
The company equips the vessel	أَلشِّرْكَةُ تُجَهِّزُ ٱلسَّفِينَةَ

English	Arabic
This food will nourish you	هَذَا ٱلطَّعَامُ يُغَذِّيكَ
Your opinion is not ours	رَأْيُكُمْ لَيْسَ رَأْيَنَا
I will sign the deed	أَنَا أَخْتِمُ ٱلصَّكَّ
Men pay taxes	أَلنَّاسُ يَدْفَعُونَ ٱلضَّرَائِبَ
The shepherds water their flocks	أَلرُّعَاةُ يَسْقُونَ قُطْعَانَهُمْ
Government defrays the expense	أَلْحُكُومَةُ تَدْفَعُ ٱلْمَصَارِيفَ
Acids corrode metals	أَلْحَوَامِضُ تَأْكُلُ ٱلْمَعَادِنَ
The best authorities differ	أَحْسَنُ ٱلْمُحَقِّقِينَ يَخْتَلِفُونَ
The prudent man looks to the future	أَللَّبِيبُ يَنْظُرُ إِلَى ٱلْمُسْتَقْبِلِ
The odour arises from the sewer	أَلرَّائِحَةُ تَطْلَعُ مِنَ ٱلْبَالُوعَةِ
The force of the torrent swept away the bridge	قُوَّةُ ٱلْمَجْرَى جَرَفَتِ ٱلْجِسْرَ
Blood nourishes the body	أَلدَّمُ يُقِيتُ ٱلْجَسَدَ
The soldier fulfilled his duties	أَلْعَسْكَرِيُّ تَمَّمَ وَاجِبَاتِهِ
The city overlooks the sea	أَلْمَدِينَةُ تُشْرِفُ عَلَى ٱلْبَحْرِ
The ox draws the plough	أَلثَّوْرُ يَجُرُّ ٱلْمِحْرَاثَ
The bees gather honey	أَلنَّحْلُ يَجْمَعُ عَسَلاً
The tide flows swiftly	أَلْمَدُّ يَجْرِي بِسُرْعَةٍ
The eagle soars in the sky	أَلنَّسْرُ يُحَلِّقُ فِي ٱلْهَوَاءِ
The banners wave in the breeze	أَلْأَعْلَامُ تَخْفِقُ فِي ٱلْهَوَاءِ
The brightness of the sun dazzles the eyes	لَمَعَانُ ٱلشَّمْسِ يَبْهَرُ ٱلْعُيُونَ
The miller grinds the corn	أَلطَّحَّانُ يَطْحَنُ ٱلْغَلَّةَ
Riches give pleasure	أَلْغِنَى يُعْطِي مَسَرَّةً

The mist hides the fields from view	أَلضَّبَابُ يَحْجُبُ ٱلْحُقُولَ عَنِ ٱلنَّظَرِ
The door shuts easily	أَلْبَابُ يُغْلَقُ بِسُهُولَةٍ
The man is like my brother	أَلرَّجُلُ يُشْبِهُ أَخِي
The orator speaks of his adventures	أَلْخَطِيبُ يَتَكَلَّمُ عَنْ مَخَاطِرِهِ
The sun lights up the earth	أَلشَّمْسُ تُنِيرُ ٱلْأَرْضَ
The wind uproots the trees	أَلرِّيحُ تَقْلَعُ ٱلْأَشْجَارَ
The window overlooks the river	أَلنَّافِذَةُ تُطِلُّ عَلَى ٱلنَّهْرِ
The spider weaves his web	أَلْعَنْكَبُوتُ تَنْسُجُ بَيْتَهَا
His misfortunes exceed the limit of belief	مَصَائِبُهُ تَفُوقُ طَوْرَ ٱلتَّصْدِيقِ
The bear climbs the trees	أَلدُّبُّ يَتَسَلَّقُ ٱلْأَشْجَارَ
The workmen ate their food	أَلْفَعَلَةُ أَكَلُوا غَدَاءَهُمْ
This news troubles and perplexes me	هَذِهِ ٱلْأَخْبَارُ تُزْعِجُنِي وَتُحَيِّرُنِي
The proud often meet with insult	أَلْمُتَكَبِّرُونَ يُلَاقُونَ ٱلْإِهَانَةَ مِرَارًا
The loud waves lashed the shore	أَلْأَمْوَاجُ ٱلْمُرْتَفِعَةُ ضَرَبَتِ ٱلشَّاطِئَ
This event caused a scandal in the city	هَذِهِ ٱلْحَادِثَةُ سَبَّبَتْ جَرْسَةً فِي ٱلْمَدِينَةِ
Some praise the work and some the architect	أَلْبَعْضُ يَمْدَحُونَ ٱلْعَمَلَ وَٱلْبَعْضُ ٱلْمُهَنْدِسَ
Every soldier girded on his armour	كُلُّ جُنْدِيٍّ لَبِسَ سِلَاحَهُ
The fire gives out heat	أَلنَّارُ تُعْطِي حَرَارَةً
The peasants plough the land	أَلْفَلَّاحُونَ يَحْرُثُونَ ٱلْأَرْضَ
It is as I expected	هُوَ كَمَا ٱنْتَظَرْتُ
The cavalry pursued the enemy	أَلْفُرْسَانُ طَرَدُوا ٱلْعَدُوَّ
Tea comes from China	أَلشَّايُ يَأْتِي مِنْ بِلَادِ ٱلصِّينِ

He locks the gate	هوَ يُقفِلُ ٱلبَوَّابَةَ
May God prolong your life	أَللهُ يُطَوِّلُ عُمْرَكُمْ
Nature asserted herself	أَلطَّبْعُ غَلَبَ ٱلتَّطَبُّعَ
Brevity is the soul of wit	خَيْرُ ٱلكَلَامِ مَا قَلَّ وَدَلَّ
The just hope for reward	أَلْعَادِلُونَ يَرْجُونَ ٱلثَّوَابَ
The unjust fear punishment	أَلظَّالِمُونَ يَخْشَوْنَ ٱلْعِقَابَ
Ships traverse the ocean	أَلسُّفُنُ تَقْطَعُ ٱلْأُوقِيَانُوسَ
The Arabs of the desert live in tents	عَرَبُ ٱلْبَادِيَةِ تَسْكُنُ ٱلْخِيَامَ
This will never do	هٰذَا لَا يَصِيرُ أَبَدًا
Distance lends enchantment to the view	أَلْبُعْدُ يُكْسِبُ ٱلْمَنْظَرَ جَمَالًا
This does not suit me	هٰذَا لَا يُنَاسِبُنِي

Words for practice :—

road	طَرِيقٌ طُرُقٌ	sharp	حَادٌّ	earth	أَرْضٌ أَرْضُونَ
repair	إِصْلَاحٌ ات	word	كَلِمَةٌ كَلِمَاتٌ	round	حَوْلٌ
friendship	صَدَاقَةٌ	virtue	فَضِيلَةٌ فَضَائِلُ	sun	شَمْسٌ شُمُوسٌ
covetous	طَمَّاعٌ	good	جَيِّدٌ	tree	شَجَرَةٌ أَشْجَارٌ
play	لَعِبٌ	character	سَجِيَّةٌ سَجَايَا	always	دَائِمًا

rich غَنِيٌّ

to last	دَامَ يَدُومُ	to reward	جَازَى*	to revolve	دَارَ يَدُورُ
to bear fruit	أَثْمَرَ*	to need	إِحْتَاجَ	to offend	كَدَّرَ*
to excel	فَاقَ يَفُوقُ	to appear	ظَهَرَ يَظْهَرُ		

* The imperfect of four-lettered verbs has ـُ for the prefix and ـِ for the penultimate consonant.

Translate:—The earth revolves round the sun. Sharp words give offence. Virtue is rewarded. The road wants mending. This friendship is lasting. A good tree bears fruit. Wisdom excels all riches. The covetous man is always in want. The character of children shews itself in their play.

Words for practice:—

soon	عَنْ قَرِيبٍ	men	أُنَاسٌ
child	وَلَدٌ أَوْلَادٌ	fortune	حَظٌّ
benefit	مَنْفَعَةٌ مَنَافِعُ	faint-hearted	ضَعِيفُ ٱلْقَلْبِ ضُعَفَاءُ
good	صَالِحٌ *	hope	أَمَلٌ آمَالٌ
piety	تَقْوَى	strife	خِصَامٌ
leaf	وَرَقُ ٱلشَّجَرَةِ أَوْرَاقٌ	autumn	خَرِيفٌ
soldier	عَسْكَرِيٌّ عَسَاكِرُ	to love	أَحَبَّ
to adorn	جَمَّلَ	to confer	أَعْطَى
to deceive	خَدَعَ يَخْدَعُ	to run	جَرَى يَجْرِي
to beget	وَلَدَ يَلِدُ	to fall	سَقَطَ يَسْقُطُ
to be begotten	تَوَلَّدَ مِنْ	to begin	اِبْتَدَأَ
fool	أَحْمَقُ حَمْقَى	all	جَمِيعٌ
folly	حَمَاقَةٌ	country	بِلَادٌ
river	نَهْرٌ أَنْهَارٌ	kindness	لُطْفٌ
twice	مَرَّتَيْنِ	to shun	أَعْرَضَ عَنْ
to give light	أَنَارَ	to produce	سَبَّبَ
to ebb	جَزَرَ يَجْزُرُ	to guard	حَرَسَ يَحْرُسُ

* The noun of agent and noun of object take the regular masculine plural, the regular feminine plural and the ة feminine for the irregular plural.

Translate:—Fools shun wisdom. The sun gives light to all. Folly is productive of many evils to men. Fortune does not help the faint-hearted. The father loves his child. Friendship confers the greatest benefits on men. Good men will adorn their country. Hope will often deceive you. Rivers run into the sea. Piety does not die with mortals. Kindness begets kindness. Strife begets strife. The sea ebbs twice a day. Leaves fall in the autumn. Soldiers guard the state.

SENTENCES IN THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREES.

This is more valuable than that	هَذَا أَثْمَنُ مِنْ ذَاكَ
This is the best	هَذَا هُوَ الْأَفْضَلُ
This is the worst	هَذَا هُوَ الْأَرْدَأُ
My portion is less than his	حِصَّتِي أَقَلُّ مِنْ حِصَّتِهِ
War is the greatest calamity	اَلْحَرْبُ أَعْظَمُ اَلْمَصَائِبِ
It is the best book	هُوَ أَحْسَنُ كِتَابٍ
This is the better of the two	هَذَا أَحْسَنُ اَلْاِثْنَيْنِ
He is the most excellent of men	هَذَا أَفْضَلُ اَلرِّجَالِ
The end is greater than the means	اَلْغَايَةُ أَعْظَمُ مِنَ اَلْوَاسِطَةِ
Man is the noblest work of God	اَلْإِنْسَانُ أَشْرَفُ أَعْمَالِ اَللهِ
He is a stronger man than I am	هُوَ رَجُلٌ أَقْوَى مِنِّي
Reputation is more enduring than life	اَلصِّيتُ أَبْقَى مِنَ اَلْحَيَاةِ
He is more prudent than wise	هُوَ فَطِنٌ أَكْثَرُ مِمَّا هُوَ حَكِيمٌ
February is the shortest month of the year	شَهْرُ شُبَاطَ أَقْصَرُ شُهُورِ اَلسَّنَةِ
To perform is better than to promise	اَلْوَفَاءُ أَفْضَلُ مِنَ اَلْوَعْدِ
Nothing is more amiable than virtue	لَا شَيْءَ أَحَبُّ مِنَ اَلْفَضِيلَةِ

Riding is pleasanter than walking	اَلرُّكُوبُ أَلَذُّ مِنَ ٱلْمَشْيِ
Health is of more value than money	لِلصِّحَّةِ قِيمَةٌ أَكْثَرُ مِنَ ٱلدَّرَاهِمِ
One affliction is lighter than two	وَيْلٌ أَهْوَنُ مِنْ وَيْلَيْنِ
That method is the best	تِلْكَ ٱلطَّرِيقَةُ هِيَ ٱلْحُسْنَى

Words for practice :—

power	قُوَّةٌ	lead	رَصَاصٌ	strong	قَوِيٌّ أَقْوِيَاءُ
good	حَسَنٌ	name	إِسْمٌ أَسْمَاءٌ	wisdom	حِكْمَةٌ حِكَمٌ
heavy	ثَقِيلٌ	gold	ذَهَبٌ	precious	ثَمِينٌ
large	كَبِيرٌ كِبَارٌ	riches	غِنًى	excellent	فَاضِلٌ
to read	قَرَأَ			much	كَثِيرٌ ون

Translate :—I am stronger than you. Wisdom is more precious than gold. He reads more than you do. This horse is stronger than yours. Gold is heavier than lead. Wisdom is more excellent than power. His words are better than yours. This house is larger than that. A good name is better than riches.

THE VERBAL SENTENCE اَلْجُمْلَةُ ٱلْفِعْلِيَّةُ

A sentence in which the predicate is (1) a verb preceding the subject, or (2) a verb which includes both subject and predicate is called a verbal sentence.

THE VERB AND THE AGENT اَلْفِعْلُ وَٱلْفَاعِلُ

(I) The noun is called the agent when it is preceded by the verb in the active voice and it takes the nominative case.

(II) The agent in both dual and plural of the masculine and feminine takes the verb in the singular.

The verb must have the sign of feminine when the agent is a real feminine noun in the singular and not separated from the verb.

(III) The agent should immediately follow the verb, but in the following cases it is preceded by the object :—

(*a*) When the action of the verb is confined to the agent by إِلاَّ preceded by مَا, لاَ or إِنَّمَا as:—

No one provides for mankind except God مَا يَرْزُقُ ٱلْخَلْقَ إِلاَّ ٱللهُ

Only Zaid struck Amr إِنَّمَا ضَرَبَ عَمْرًا زَيْدٌ

(*b*) When the object is an attached pronoun and the agent a noun, as:—

My father loves me يُحِبُّنِي أَبِي

(*c*) When the agent contains a pronoun which refers to the object, as :—

The blossom beautified the trees زَانَ ٱلشَّجَرَ زَهْرُهُ

II.

The man came	جَاءَ ٱلرَّجُلُ
The two men came	جَاءَ ٱلرَّجُلاَنِ
The men came	جَاءَ ٱلرِّجَالُ
The sun arose	طَلَعَ ٱلشَّمْسُ
The believer will come	يَجِيءُ ٱلْمُؤْمِنُ
The two believers will come	يَجِيءُ ٱلْمُؤْمِنَانِ
The believers will come	يَجِيءُ ٱلْمُؤْمِنُونَ
The woman came	جَاءَتِ ٱلْمَرْأَةُ
The two women came	جَاءَتِ ٱلْمَرْأَتَانِ
The women came	جَاءَتِ ٱلنِّسَاءُ
The sun arose	طَلَعَتِ ٱلشَّمْسُ

The believer will come (*fem.*)	تَجِيءُ ٱلْمُؤْمِنَةُ
The two believers will come (*fem.*)	تَجِيءُ ٱلْمُؤْمِنَتَانِ
The believers will come (*fem.*)	تَجِيءُ ٱلْمُؤْمِنَاتُ

THE INTRANSITIVE VERB.

His hope failed	خَابَ أَمَلُهُ
The fleet sailed	أَقْلَعَ ٱلْأُسْطُولُ
The agreement was cancelled	بَطَلَ ٱلِٱتِّفَاقُ
The war broke out	ثَارَتِ ٱلْحَرْبُ
The traveller went astray	تَاهَ ٱلسَّائِحُ
Hope was cut off	إِنْقَطَعَ ٱلرَّجَاءُ
His enterprise came to naught	حَبِطَ مَسْعَاهُ
A fierce conflict ensued	حَدَثَتْ مُنَازَعَةٌ شَدِيدَةٌ
He took his own course	مَشَى بِحَسَبِ رَأْيِهِ
The fruit ripened	نَضِجَتِ ٱلْأَثْمَارُ
The wind died down	هَدَأَتِ ٱلرِّيحُ
The wind became tempestuous	عَصَفَتِ ٱلرِّيحُ
Rain fell heavily	هَطَلَ ٱلْمَطَرُ
He promises and does not perform	يَعِدُ وَلَا يَفِي
The patient is almost well	صَحَّ ٱلْمَرِيضُ تَقْرِيبًا
Our efforts failed to avert the calamity	خَابَتْ مَسَاعِينَا فِي دَفْعِ ٱلْمُصِيبَةِ
He died from the effects of the wound	مَاتَ عَلَى أَثَرِ جُرْحٍ أَصَابَهُ
The news spread	ذَاعَ ٱلْخَبَرُ

His breathing ceased	خَمَدَتْ أَنفَاسُهُ
The time is past	فَاتَ ٱلْوَقْتُ
The appointed time has come (death)	حَانَ ٱلْأَجَلُ
His determination was weak	وَهَنَ عَزْمُهُ
The affair was prolonged	طَالَ ٱلْأَمْرُ
His heart was strengthened	قَوِيَ قَلْبُهُ
The day is ended	إِنْقَضَى ٱلنَّهَارُ
The sea was rough	هَاجَ ٱلْبَحْرُ
The ice has melted	ذَابَ ٱلْجَلِيدُ
The sun appeared	بَزَغَتِ ٱلشَّمْسُ
The thunder rattled	هَزَمَ ٱلرَّعْدُ
Give of what you have	جُدْ بِمَا تَجِدُ
Our undertaking is finished at last	قَدْ تَمَّ مَشْرُوعُنَا أَخِيرًا
He lived in the beginning of the second century of the Christian era	عَاشَ فِي صَدْرِ ٱلْمِئَةِ ٱلثَّانِيَةِ لِلْمِيلَادِ
My companion fell in the battle	سَقَطَ رَفِيقِي فِي ٱلْمَعْرَكَةِ
The sun sank and darkness fell	غَابَتِ ٱلشَّمْسُ وَسَقَطَ ٱلظَّلَامُ
They repented of doing this	نَدِمُوا لِفِعْلِهِمْ هٰذَا
The train came down the incline	سَارَ قِطَارُ ٱلْحَدِيدِ عَنِ ٱلْمُنْعَطَفِ
The ammunition arrived with a convoy of cavalry	وَصَلَ ٱلْبَارُودُ مَعَ جَمَاعَةٍ مِنَ ٱلْفُرْسَانِ
The fire of war smouldered	خَمَدَتْ نَارُ ٱلْحَرْبِ
His sight became dim with the advance of years	كَلَّتْ عَيْنَاهُ مَعَ تَوَالِي ٱلْأَيَّامِ
They argued quite from the point	خَرَجُوا عَنْ مَوْضُوعِ ٱلْجِدَالِ

I got tired of watching	تَعِبْتُ مِنَ ٱلْمُرَاقَبَةِ
He died in exile	مَاتَ فِي ٱلْمَنْفَى
He fought manfully	حَارَبَ بِشَجَاعَةٍ
We dine in the middle of the day	نَتَغَدَّى فِي وَسَطِ ٱلنَّهَارِ
We will follow this plan	نَجْرِي عَلَى هٰذَا ٱلْقَانُونِ
My hopes vanish	تَتَلَاشَى آمَالِي
We were ready for the journey	إِسْتَعْدَدْنَا لِلرَّحِيلِ
Our ally was victorious	إِنْتَصَرَتْ حَلِيفَتُنَا
He perspired	عَرِقَ وَجْهُهُ
He went his own way	سَارَ فِي طَرِيقِهِ ٱلْخَاصِّ

Words for practice :—

bravery	شَجَاعَةٌ	forest	غَابَةٌ	cattle	مَوَاشِي
special	خَاصٌّ خَوَاصُّ	student	طَالِبٌ طَلَبَةٌ	hunger	جُوعٌ
natural	طَبِيعِيٌّ	track	أَثَرٌ آثَارٌ	sleep	نَوْمٌ
brightness	بِشْرٌ	study	دَرَسَ يَدْرُسُ	to fly	طَارَ يَطِيرُ
to escape	نَجَا يَنْجُو	to exert one's self	جَدَّ يَجِدُّ	to shine	لَمَعَ يَلْمَعُ
to awake	أَفَاقَ	to run off	شَرَدَ يَشْرُدُ	to wax hot	حَمِيَ يَحْمَى
hero	بَطَلٌ أَبْطَالٌ	to fight	حَارَبَ		

Translate :—

مَاتَ كُلُّ ٱلْمَوَاشِي مِنَ ٱلْجُوعِ . طَارَ نَوْمِي مِنْ عَيْنَيَّ . لَمَعَ ٱلْبِشْرُ فِي عَيْنَيْهِ . طَارَ ٱلطَّائِرُ عَلَى ٱلْقَلْعَةِ . سَارَ ٱلسَّائِحُ فِي وَسَطِ ٱلْغَابَةِ . يَجِدُّ ٱلطَّالِبُ فِي دَرْسِ ٱلطَّبِيعِيَّاتِ . عَدَا فِي أَثَرِكَ . نَجَوْنَا بِشَجَاعَةِ رَجُلٍ وَاحِدٍ . أَفَاقَ ٱلْمَلِكُ مِنْ نَوْمِهِ . حَمِيَ غَضَبُهُ . شَرَدَ ٱلْوَلَدُ . حَارَبَ عَسَاكِرُنَا كَٱلْأَبْطَالِ

THE TRANSITIVE VERB.

Transitive verbs govern their objects in the accusative case. Intransitive verbs are often made transitive by means of a preposition. When the preposition comes between the verb and its object, the latter is put in the genitive by the preposition.

He reached manhood	بَلَغَ أَشُدَّهُ
He succeeded his father	خَلَفَ أَبَاهُ
I wearied of my life	مَلِلْتُ حَيَاتِي
He managed his own affairs	دَبَّرَ أُمُورَهُ
I understand your meaning	أَفْهَمُ مُرَادَكَ
I lost my ring	ضَيَّعْتُ خَاتَمِي
He wounded his feelings	* جَرَحَ إِحْسَاسَاتِهِ
The fever exhausted him	نَهَكَتْهُ ٱلْحُمَّى
I filled his place	قُمْتُ مَقَامَهُ
He broke the oath	نَكَثَ ٱلْيَمِينَ
He was safe from his perfidy	أَمِنَ غَدْرَهُ
I forgot my trouble	سَلَوْتُ هَمِّي
Thirst distressed him	جَهَدَهُ ٱلْعَطَشُ
He controlled himself	تَمَالَكَ نَفْسَهُ
He did me a favour	عَمِلَ لِي مَعْرُوفًا
He told his tale	شَرَحَ قِصَّتَهُ
He embarked	رَكِبَ ٱلسَّفِينَةَ

* The regular feminine plural takes ـِ in the accusative case.

He frowned	قَطَّبَ حَاجِبَيْهِ
He paid my debt	وَفَّى دَيْنِي
I obtained the prize	نِلْتُ ٱلْجَائِزَةَ
He fulfils his promises	يُنْجِزُ مَوَاعِيدَهُ
I refuse your request	أَرْفُضُ طَلَبَكَ
I will do it as I see fit	أَفْعَلُهُ كَمَا أَرَى
Add together this column of figures	إِجْمَعْ عَمُودَ ٱلْأَرْقَامِ هٰذَا
A day behind the fair	سَبَقَ ٱلسَّيْفُ ٱلْعَذَلَ
I detest all show	أَمْقُتُ كُلَّ تَبَاهٍ
Banish such fears	أُطْرُدْ مَخَاوِفَ كَهٰذِهِ
He reached the court-yard of his castle	بَلَغَ سَاحَةَ قَصْرِهِ
He mounted his horse and started	رَكِبَ جَوَادَهُ وَسَارَ
He assuaged his thirst	بَرَّدَ ظَمَأَهُ
He gave it to me	أَعْطَانِي إِيَّاهُ
He laments his bad luck	يَنْدُبُ سُوءَ بَخْتِهِ
He treated him well	أَحْسَنَ مُعَامَلَتَهُ
He treated him badly	أَسَاءَ مُعَامَلَتَهُ
I equipped myself	جَهَّزْتُ حَالِي
I will do what I can	أَعْمَلُ مَا أَقْدِرُ عَلَيْهِ
He bandaged his eyes	عَصَبَ عَيْنَيْهِ
He shrugged his shoulders	هَزَّ عِطْفَيْهِ
He met with his reward	لَقِيَ جَزَاءَهُ

He suppressed his anger	كَظَمَ غَيْظَهُ
He broke his covenant	نَقَضَ عَهْدَهُ
He knew that himself	عَرَفَ ذَلِكَ مِنْ نَفْسِهِ
He exposed himself to death	عَرَّضَ نَفْسَهُ لِلْمَوْتِ
He put forth his might	بَذَلَ جَهْدَهُ
He put the enemy to flight	هَزَمَ ٱلْعَدُوَّ
We did not see him again	مَا عُدْنَا رَأَيْنَاهُ
I obtained the object of my desire	بَلَغْتُ غَايَةَ مُرَادِي
He shewed them hospitality	صَنَعَ لَهُمْ ضِيَافَةً
You ask what is impossible	تَطْلُبُ ٱلْمُسْتَحِيلَ
I see how you did it	أَرَى كَيْفَ فَعَلْتَهُ
He sought our opinion	طَلَبَ رَأْيَنَا
He bade adieu to his friends	وَدَّعَ أَصْدِقَاءَهُ
The physician repeated his observations	كَرَّرَ ٱلطَّبِيبُ مُلَاحَظَاتِهِ
He prolonged his journey	أَطَالَ سِيَاحَتَهُ
They pressed the siege	ضَيَّقُوا ٱلْحِصَارَ
He turned over the leaves of the book	قَلَّبَ صَفَحَاتِ ٱلْكِتَابِ
He finished his task	تَمَّمَ أُمْثُولَتَهُ
I direct your attention to my former statement	أُوَجِّهُ ٱلْتِفَاتَكَ إِلَى قَوْلِي ٱلسَّابِقِ
He will visit us this evening	يُشَرِّفُنَا فِي هٰذَا ٱلْمَسَاءِ
Every one emptied his knapsack	فَرَّغَ كُلُّ وَاحِدٍ حَقِيبَتَهُ
He denied all knowledge of the transaction	أَنْكَرَ كُلَّ مَعْرِفَةٍ بِٱلْقَضِيَّةِ

He proved his assertion	عَزَّزَ قَوْلَهُ بِٱلْبُرْهَانِ
I maintain my innocence	أُثْبِتُ بَرَاءَتِي
The speaker made a fine speech	قَدَّمَ ٱلْخَطِيبُ خِطَابًا جَمِيلًا
I tried that and did not succeed	حَاوَلْتُ ذَلِكَ فَلَمْ أُفْلِحْ
He bequeathed to us three thousand dinars	خَلَّفَ لَنَا ثَلَاثَةَ آلَافِ دِينَارٍ
The regiment took six hundred prisoners	أَخَذَتِ ٱلْكَتِيبَةُ سِتَّمِائَةِ أَسِيرٍ
The caravan crossed the desert	عَبَرَتِ ٱلْقَافِلَةُ ٱلصَّحْرَاءَ
The fates have driven us to this pass	سَاقَتْنَا ٱلْمَقَادِيرُ إِلَى هَذَا ٱلْبَابِ
I will not again do anything like this	لَا أَعُودُ أَعْمَلُ شَيْئًا كَهَذَا
We prolonged our stay in the town	أَطَلْنَا ٱلْإِقَامَةَ فِي ٱلْبَلَدِ
I will relate the events as they happened	أَرْوِي ٱلْأُمُورَ كَمَا جَرَتْ
I beg you to repeat what you said	أَرْجُو إِعَادَةَ مَا قُلْتَهُ
The man accepted his excuse	قَبِلَ ٱلرَّجُلُ عُذْرَهُ
They reached the camp in three days	وَصَلُوا ٱلْمَحَلَّةَ فِي ثَلَاثَةِ أَيَّامٍ
They did to them according to their desire	عَمِلُوا بِهِمْ حَسَبَ إِرَادَتِهِمْ
He wrote an excellent treatise on chemistry	كَتَبَ مَقَالَةً بَدِيعَةً فِي ٱلْكِيمِيَاءِ
We left a garrison in the town	تَرَكْنَا حَامِيَةً فِي ٱلْبَلَدِ
May God make your evening happy	* أَسْعَدَ ٱللهُ مَسَاءَكَ
May God prolong your life	* أَدَامَ ٱللهُ بَقَاءَكَ
May God reward you	* جَزَاكَ ٱللهُ خَيْرًا
He took trouble over it	كَلَّفَ نَفْسَهُ بِهِ

---

* Optative us of the preterite.

I succeeded him in the office	خَلَفْتُهُ فِي ٱلْوَظِيفَةِ
He composed popular poems	نَظَمَ أَشْعَارًا مَقْبُولَةً
The prisoner met with brutal treatment	لَاقَى ٱلْمَسْجُونُ مُعَامَلَةً وَحْشِيَّةً
He shook hands with him	صَافَحَهُمْ بِيَدِهِ
I will help you to the best of my ability	أُسَاعِدُكَ بِقَدْرِ إِمْكَانِي
Our host treats us kindly	يُلَاطِفُنَا مُضِيفُنَا
They repaid our kindness twofold	كَافَأُوا لُطْفَنَا مُضَاعَفًا
The nobility opposed the crown	قَاوَمَ ٱلْأَشْرَافُ حُكْمَ ٱلْمَلِكِ
He welcomed his guests effusively	أَنْزَلَ ضُيُوفَهُ عَلَى ٱلرَّحْبِ وَٱلسَّعَةِ
He vacated his seat for him	أَخْلَى مَقْعَدَهُ لَهُ
He mentioned his name in the course of the speech	أَوْرَدَ ٱسْمَهُ فِي سِيَاقِ ٱلْكَلَامِ
He gave me a contribution	أَعْطَانِي مُسَاعَدَةً مَالِيَّةً
I fully comprehend your meaning	أُدْرِكُ مَعْنَاكَ بِٱلتَّمَامِ
They demanded the punishment of the thief	طَلَبُوا قِصَاصَ ٱللِّصِّ
Bear ye one another's burdens	اِحْمِلُوا بَعْضُكُمْ أَثْقَالَ بَعْضٍ
He did it as I told him	فَعَلَهُ كَمَا قُلْتُ لَهُ
Explain the meaning of the word "plaintiff"	اِشْرَحْ مَعْنَى ٱلْكَلِمَةِ "مُدَّعٍ"
The merchant sold all his goods	بَاعَ ٱلتَّاجِرُ كُلَّ بِضَاعَتِهِ
We place all hope of safety in your help	نَجْعَلُ كُلَّ رَجَاءِ سَلَامَتِنَا عَلَى مُسَاعَدَتِكُمْ
They planted the British banner upon her battlements	نَصَبُوا ٱلْعَلَمَ ٱلْبِرِيطَانِيَّ عَلَى مَتَارِيسِهَا
Take whatever place the master assigns you	خُذْ أَيَّ مَكَانٍ يُعَيِّنُهُ لَكَ ٱلْمُعَلِّمُ
I saw the decoration on the soldier's breast	رَأَيْتُ ٱلْوِسَامَ عَلَى صَدْرِ ٱلْعَسْكَرِيِّ

I will explain the matter to you — أَشْرَحُ لَكَ ٱلْأَمْرَ

I will disclose to you my intention — أَكْشِفُ لَكَ قَصْدِي

He amused himself with the game — سَلَّى نَفْسَهُ بِٱللُّعْبَةِ

He inquired as to their health — سَأَلَهُمْ عَنْ صِحَّتِهِمْ

I brought him up as my own son — رَبَّيْتُهُ كَٱبْنِي

He shot the arrow from the bow — رَمَى ٱلسَّهْمَ مِنَ ٱلْقَوْسِ

He sent me to you with a message — بَعَثَنِي إِلَيْكَ بِرِسَالَةٍ

He carried his burden manfully — حَمَلَ حِمْلَهُ بِمُرُوَّةٍ

The fever reached its crisis — وَصَلَتِ ٱلْحُمَّى دَرَجَتَهَا ٱلْعُلْيَا

He divulged the secret — أَفْشَى ٱلسِّرَّ

He discovered the secret — كَشَفَ ٱلسِّرَّ

He pondered the matter well — أَجَالَ فِي ٱلْأَمْرِ فِكْرَتَهُ

We assisted them with men and means — أَمْدَدْنَاهُمْ بِرِجَالٍ وَمَالٍ

He threw a stone at the bird — رَمَى ٱلْعُصْفُورَ بِحَجَرٍ

What induced him to do this? — مَا حَمَلَهُ عَلَى هٰذَا ٱلْأَمْرِ

Is there anything I can do for you? — هَلْ مِنْ حَاجَةٍ أَقْضِيهَا لَكَ

I see no cause to fear you — لَا أَرَى دَاعِيًا لِلْخَوْفِ مِنْكَ

Spread the mat upon the floor — أُفْرُشِ ٱلْحَصِيرَةَ عَلَى أَرْضِ ٱلْبَيْتِ

Hold your hand — كُفَّ يَدَكَ

Pour me out a glass of water — صُبَّ لِي كَأْسَ مَاءٍ

Do as you like — إِفْعَلْ مَا بَدَا لَكَ

Get the horses ready — شُدَّ عَلَى ٱلْخَيْلِ

Count the money	إِحْسِبِ ٱلدَّرَاهِمَ
Bring the tray	أَحْضِرِ ٱلصِّينِيَّةَ
Excuse me	لَا تُؤَاخِذْنِي
Send for him	أَرْسِلْ وَرَاءَهُ
May I trouble you	كَلِّفْ خَاطِرَكَ
Lend it to me	أَعِرْنِي إِيَّاهُ
See to that yourself	دَبِّرْهُ أَنْتَ
Light the candle	أَضِئِ ٱلشَّمْعَةَ
Translate this expression	تَرْجِمْ هٰذِهِ ٱلْعِبَارَةَ
Shew me the way	أَرِنِي ٱلطَّرِيقَ
Do not neglect it	لَا تُهْمِلْهُ
Do not delay me	لَا تُعَوِّقْنِي
Give me a pen	هَاتِ لِي قَلَمًا
Get out of my way	أَبْعِدْ عَنِّي
Lift up your voice	إِرْفَعْ صَوْتَكَ
Give me a little water to drink	إِسْقِنِي قَلِيلَ مَاءٍ
Call your master	أُدْعُ سَيِّدَكَ
Tell me your opinion about that	قُلْ لِي رَأْيَكَ فِي ذَلِكَ
Pour the fluid into a clean glass	أُسْكُبِ ٱلسَّائِلَ فِي زُجَاجَةٍ نَظِيفَةٍ
Sprinkle this water upon it	رُشَّ هٰذَا ٱلْمَاءَ عَلَيْهِ
Give me your hand	نَاوِلْنِي يَدَكَ
Take a pledge from them	خُذْ مِنْهُمْ عَرَبُونًا

I heard a knock at the door	سَمِعْتُ نَقْرَةً عَلَى ٱلْبَابِ
Tell me who you are	قُلْ لِي مَنْ أَنْتَ
Explain to me what you want	إِشْرَحْ لِي مَا تُرِيدُ
Leave me alone	دَعْنِي وَحْدِي
Place the comb and brush in the drawer	ضَعِ ٱلْمُشْطَ وَٱلْفُرْشَةَ فِي ٱلْجَرَّارِ
The room holds a number of people	تَسَعُ ٱلْغُرْفَةُ أَشْخَاصًا عَدِيدَةً
Put the letter in the envelope	ضَعِ ٱلْمَكْتُوبَ فِي ٱلْمُغَلَّفِ
Do it for his sake	إِفْعَلْهُ إِكْرَامًا لَهُ
Let me remain in the house	دَعْنِي أَبْقَى فِي ٱلْبَيْتِ

Words for practice :—

past	مَاضٍ	truth	حَقٌّ
wood	حَطَبٌ	gate	بَوَّابَةٌ
not	لَا	box	صُنْدُوقٌ صَنَادِيقُ
to shut	أَغْلَقَ	to open	فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ
to wash	غَسَلَ يَغْسِلُ	to praise	مَدَحَ يَمْدَحُ
to neglect	أَهْمَلَ	to agree with	وَافَقَ
bench	مَقْعَدٌ	to sit	قَعَدَ يَقْعُدُ
to dismiss	صَرَفَ يَصْرِفُ	to examine	فَحَصَ يَفْحَصُ
safety	أَمَانٌ	wine	خَمْرٌ
work, occupation	شُغْلٌ أَشْغَالٌ	to taste	ذَاقَ يَذُوقُ
to erase	مَحَا يَمْحُو	to forget	نَسِيَ يَنْسَى
	to split	شَقَّ يَشُقُّ	

Translate :—We seek safety. We tasted the wine. I do not know the number. I erased his name. I spoke the truth. He entered the house. We opened the gate. She praised our work. Shut the door. Wash your face. Forget the past. I agree with him. They neglected their work. Open the box. He split the wood. Sit on that bench. I will examine him. Send him away. He carried it upon his back.

Words for practice :—

price	ثَمَنٌ أَثْمَانٌ	furrier	فَرَّاءٌ	axe	فَأْسٌ فُؤُوسٌ
place	مَحَلٌّ مَحَلَّاتٌ	pearl	لُؤْلُؤَةٌ لَآلِئُ	skin	جِلْدٌ جُلُودٌ
kindness	لُطْفٌ	stay	إِقَامَةٌ	slave	عَبْدٌ عَبِيدٌ
rest	رَاحَةٌ	some	بَعْضٌ	let me	دَعْنِي
to place	وَضَعَ يَضَعُ	to do, make	صَنَعَ يَصْنَعُ	to cut	قَطَعَ يَقْطَعُ
to be long	طَالَ يَطُولُ	to call	دَعَا يَدْعُو	to help	سَاعَدَ

Translate :—

أَخَذَ بَعْضَ ٱلرَّاحَةِ . قَطَعَ ٱلشَّجَرَةَ بِفَأْسٍ . خُذِ ٱلْجِلْدَ إِلَى ٱلْفَرَّاءِ . وَجَدَ لُؤْلُؤَةً كَثِيرَةَ ٱلثَّمَنِ . سَيَصْنَعُ ٱلْعَمَلَ فِي وَقْتِهِ . وَضَعَ ٱلشَّيْءَ فِي مَحَلِّهِ . يَدْعُونِي عَبْدَهُ . دَعْنِي أُسَاعِدْكَ . أَمْدَحُكَ لِفِعْلِكَ هٰذَا . لَا تَدَعْهُ يُطِيلُ ٱلْإِقَامَةَ . قَبِلَهُمْ بِلُطْفٍ . نَقْرَأُ كُتُبًا جَدِيدَةً

Words for practice :—

for nothing	مَجَّانًا	few	قَلِيلٌ	harvest	حَصَادٌ
knot	عُقْدَةٌ عُقَدٌ	mat	حَصِيرٌ حُصُرٌ	request	سُؤَالٌ ات
to sweep	كَنَسَ يَكْنِسُ	shoe	نَعْلٌ نِعَالٌ	rope	حَبْلٌ حِبَالٌ
to esteem	إِعْتَبَرَ	to expect	إِنْتَظَرَ	to accede to	قَبِلَ يَقْبَلُ
to complete	تَمَّمَ	to tighten	شَدَّ يَشُدُّ	to weave	نَسَجَ يَنْسُجُ
to tie	عَقَدَ يَعْقِدُ	to take off	خَلَعَ يَخْلَعُ	to put on	لَبِسَ يَلْبَسُ

Translate:—The horse threw the groom. I acceded to his request. He called me. Call them. Look at those beautiful flowers. We expect a good harvest. I know a few words. I spend my time in the school. Sweep the room. I esteem your friendship. The boy broke the stick. He weaves mats and sells them. I will do this for nothing. He tied the knot. I tightened the rope. I liked him. I will give it. I have read it. We have completed the work. Take off your shoe. Put it on.

INVERSION OF THE NORMAL ORDER OF WORDS IN THE SENTENCE.

The subordinate clause may come first for emphasis.

In summer the inhabitants live on grapes	فِي ٱلصَّيْفِ ٱلسُّكَّانُ يَعِيشُونَ عَلَى ٱلعِنَبِ
Many of the soldiers fled to the enemy	كَثِيرُونَ مِنَ ٱلْعَسْكَرِ هَرَبُوا إِلَى ٱلْعَدُوِّ
To what conclusion has he come?	إِلَى أَيَّةِ نَتِيجَةٍ وَصَلَ
In his exile he reflected upon his misfortunes	* فِي مَنْفَاهُ تَأَمَّلَ فِي مَصَائِبِهِ
Out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh	مِنْ فَضْلَةِ ٱلْقَلْبِ يَتَكَلَّمُ ٱلْفَمُ
At this very time the affair happened	فِي هَذَا ٱلْوَقْتِ عَيْنِهِ حَدَثَ ٱلْأَمْرُ
In that year a plague visited the city	فِي تِلْكَ ٱلسَّنَةِ أَصَابَ ٱلْمَدِينَةَ وَبَاءٌ عَظِيمٌ
By our valour we shall overcome the enemy	بِبَأْسِنَا نَقْهَرُ ٱلْعَدُوَّ
In what century did he live?	فِي أَيِّ قَرْنٍ عَاشَ
To what extent was that news true?	إِلَى أَيَّةِ دَرَجَةٍ كَانَ ذَلِكَ ٱلْخَبَرُ صَحِيحًا
One tale is good till another is told	ٱلْأَوَّلُ فِي دَعْوَاهُ مُحِقٌّ

---

* Vowels are implied on ا and ى

THE PASSIVE VOICE. نَائِبُ ٱلْفَاعِلِ

The object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive and is put in the nominative case.

The affair is settled	قُضِيَ ٱلْأَمْرُ
The tent is pitched	نُصِبَتِ ٱلْخَيْمَةُ
The contract is signed	أُمْضِيَ ٱلسَّنَدُ
His patience is exhausted	عِيلَ صَبْرُهُ
The anchor is dropped	أُنْزِلَتِ ٱلْمِرْسَاةُ
It meets the need	تُسَدُّ بِهِ ٱلْحَاجَةُ
There is room enough	يُوجَدُ مَكَانٌ كَافٍ
The cannons are firing	تُطْلَقُ ٱلْمَدَافِعُ
The bell has rung	دُقَّ ٱلْجَرَسُ
He was invited to the banquet	دُعِيَ إِلَى ٱلْوَلِيمَةِ
As previously mentioned	كَمَا ذُكِرَ آنِفًا
Your request will be granted	تُعْطَى سُؤْلَكَ
The roads are impassable	ٱلطُّرُقُ لَا تُعْبَرُ
There are some who think	يُوجَدُ بَعْضٌ يَظُنُّونَ
One of the two will be taken	يُؤْخَذُ أَحَدُ ٱلِاثْنَيْنِ
It was written by Divine inspiration	كُتِبَ بِإِلْهَامٍ إِلَهِيٍّ
The messenger was sent in haste	أُرْسِلَ ٱلسَّاعِي بِسُرْعَةٍ
He died at midnight	تُوُفِّيَ فِي نِصْفِ ٱللَّيْلِ
The man was impressed into the fleet	سُخِّرَ ٱلرَّجُلُ لِخِدَمِ ٱلْأُسْطُولِ
The deserter was shot	أُطْلِقَ عَلَى ٱلْهَارِبِ ٱلرَّصَاصُ

One thing recalls another	أَلشَّيْءُ بِالشَّيْءِ يُذْكَرُ
He was attacked with malarial fever	أُصِيبَ بِحُمَّى مَلَارِيَّةٍ
The decree of God cannot be gainsaid	حُكْمُ ٱللهِ لَا يُرَدُّ
Gas is made from coal	أَلْغَازُ يُصْنَعُ مِنَ ٱلْفَحْمِ ٱلْحَجَرِيِّ
I am not permitted to go	لَا يُسْمَحُ لِي بِالذَّهَابِ
The siege of the town was raised	رُفِعَ ٱلْحِصَارُ عَنِ ٱلْبَلَدِ
The question was deferred for two months	أُجِّلَتِ ٱلْمَسْأَلَةُ إِلَى شَهْرَيْنِ
He was born in the fourth century	وُلِدَ فِي خِلَالِ ٱلْقَرْنِ ٱلرَّابِعِ
Little expeditions were sent to explore	أُرْسِلَتْ حَمْلَاتٌ قَلِيلَةٌ لِلِاكْتِشَافِ
The quotation is found on the second page	يُوجَدُ ٱلِاقْتِبَاسُ فِي ٱلصَّفْحَةِ ٱلثَّانِيَةِ
The consul was killed in the capital	قُتِلَ ٱلْقُنْصُلُ فِي ٱلْعَاصِمَةِ
The matter was concealed from us	أُخْفِيَ عَنَّا ٱلْأَمْرُ
He will be punished for his action	يُقَاصُّ عَلَى فِعْلِهِ
He was intrusted with it	أُوتُمِنَ عَلَيْهِ
The cavalry were regarded as the bravest of the soldiery	أُعْتُبِرَ ٱلْفُرْسَانُ أَشْجَعَ ٱلْجُنُودِ
A letter is read by its address	أَلْمَكْتُوبُ يُقْرَأُ مِنْ عُنْوَانِهِ
Your fault is amended	أُقِيلَتْ عَثْرَتُكَ
Matters were soon put right	أُصْلِحَتِ ٱلْأُمُورُ فِي ٱلْحَالِ

Words for practice :—

garden	بُسْتَانٌ بَسَاتِينُ	cover	غِطَاءٌ أَغْطِيَةٌ	hero	بَطَلٌ أَبْطَالٌ
appendix	تَذْيِيلٌ ات	thief	لِصٌّ لُصُوصٌ	purse	كِيسٌ دَرَاهِمَ
result	نَتِيجَةٌ نَتَائِجُ	crew	بَحْرِيَّةٌ	prisoner	أَسِيرٌ أَسْرَى

to know	عَرَفَ يَعْرِفُ	to burn	أَحْرَقَ	fuel	حَطَبٌ
to build	بَنَى يَبْنِي	to lift	رَفَعَ يَرْفَعُ	to save	أَنْقَذَ
to print	طَبَعَ يَطْبَعُ	to sharpen	بَرَى يَبْرِي	to honour	أَكْرَمَ
to catch	أَمْسَكَ	to lose	فَقَدَ يَفْقِدُ	to steal	سَرَقَ يَسْرِقُ
		to sow	زَرَعَ يَزْرَعُ		

Translate:—The hero will be honoured. The purse was stolen. The cover was lifted. The pen was sharpened. The book is sold. The thief was caught. The house is building. The book is being printed. The garden is sown. His horse was killed and he was taken prisoner. Many soldiers were wounded. The appendix of this book is lost. The results are known. All the fuel is burnt.

Words for practice:—

age	عُمْرٌ أَعْمَارٌ	arms	سِلَاحٌ أَسْلِحَةٌ	table	مَائِدَةٌ مَوَائِدُ
foal	مُهْرٌ أَمْهَارٌ	evil person	شِرِّيرٌ	wood	خَشَبٌ
late afternoon	* عَصْرٌ عُصُورٌ	evening	* عِشَاءٌ	net	حِبَالَةٌ حَبَائِلُ
also	أَيْضًا	to water	أَرْوَى	to trap	صَادَ يَصِيدُ
noon	* ظُهْرٌ	morning	* صُبْحٌ	sunset	* غُرُوبٌ

Translate:—

عُمِلَتِ ٱلْمَوَائِدُ وَٱلْكَرَاسِيُّ مِنَ ٱلْخَشَبِ . دُعِيَ ٱلْعَسَاكِرُ إِلَى حَمْلِ ٱلسِّلَاحِ . يُعْرَفُ عُمْرُ ٱلْمُهْرِ مِنْ أَسْنَانِهِ . يُصَادُ ٱلشِّرِّيرُ مِنْ حَبَائِلِهِ . وُلِدَ لَهُ سَبْعَةُ بَنِينَ وَثَلَاثُ بَنَاتٍ . أَلْيَوْمُ يُقَسَّمُ إِلَى خَمْسَةِ أَوْقَاتٍ وَهِيَ ٱلصُّبْحُ وَٱلظُّهْرُ وَٱلْعَصْرُ وَٱلْغُرُوبُ وَٱلْعِشَاءُ . أَلْمَرْوِيُّ هُوَ أَيْضًا يُرْوَى . فَعَلَ كَمَا قِيلَ لَهُ

* These nouns take the article.

THE INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE.

The interrogative nouns and particles are :—

simple interrogation	أَ ، هَلْ	who	مَنْ	what	مَا ، مَاذَا
who, which, what	أَيٌّ ، أَيَّةٌ	where	أَيْنَ	when	مَتَى
how	كَيْفَ	how much, many	كَمْ		

Compound interrogative particles are :—

to whom	لِمَنْ	by whom	بِمَنْ	from whom	مِمَّنْ (مِنْ مَنْ)
is not	هَلَّا (هَلْ لَا)	is not	أَلَا	is not	أَمَا
for how much	بِكَمْ	for what	لِمَ (لِمَا)	with what	بِمَ
about what	عَمَّا (عَنْ مَا)	about whom	عَمَّنْ (عَنْ مَنْ)	to what	إِلَامَ (إِلَى مَا)
upon what	عَلَامَ (عَلَى مَا)				

The أَ may be prefixed to the conjunctions فَ and وَ

NOTE.—كَمْ takes the noun of number in the accusative singular, as :—

How many men are there in the house ? كَمْ رَجُلاً فِي ٱلْبَيْتِ

What is it ?	مَا هُوَ	Who art thou ?	مَنْ أَنْتَ
How are you ?	كَيْفَ أَنْتَ	Where is he ?	أَيْنَ هُوَ
What is your name ?	مَا ٱسْمُكَ	What have you ?	مَاذَا عِنْدَكَ
How are you ?	كَيْفَ حَالُكَ	Who is this ?	مَنْ هُوَ هٰذَا
Who is there ?	مَنْ هُنَاكَ	Which is the way ?	أَيْنَ ٱلطَّرِيقُ
Is it true ?	هَلْ هُوَ صَحِيحٌ	Are you right ?	هَلْ أَنْتَ مُحِقٌّ

Whose son are you?	إِبْنُ مَنْ أَنْتَ
How is that?	كَيْفَ ذٰلِكَ
How much have you?	كَمْ عِنْدَكَ
How old are you?	كَمْ عُمْرُكَ
What is your need?	مَا حَاجَتُكَ
How high is it?	كَمْ هُوَ عَالٍ
What depth is it?	مَا هُوَ عُمْقُهُ
What size is it?	مَا هُوَ حَجْمُهُ
Is it possible?	هَلْ هُوَ مُمْكِنٌ
Why is he here?	لِمَاذَا هُوَ هُنَا
What ails you?	مَا لَكَ
Is that yours?	هَلْ ذٰلِكَ لَكَ
What news have you?	أَيُّ خَبَرٍ عِنْدَكَ
Who is in the house?	مَنْ فِي ٱلدَّارِ
Have you the key?	هَلِ ٱلْمِفْتَاحُ مَعَكَ
What is the fare?	مَا هِيَ أُجْرَةُ ٱلسَّفَرِ
Is the amount correct?	هَلِ ٱلْمَبْلَغُ صَحِيحٌ
Is your father at home?	هَلْ أَبُوكَ فِي ٱلْبَيْتِ
Do I owe you anything?	هَلْ لَكَ عَلَيَّ شَيْءٌ
Have you any money?	هَلْ عِنْدَكُمْ دَرَاهِمُ
Whence does he come?	مِنْ أَيْنَ هُوَ آتٍ
Am I right or wrong?	هَلِ ٱلْحَقُّ مَعِي أَوْ عَلَيَّ

English	Arabic
How much do I owe you?	كَمْ لَكَ عَلَيَّ
How much do you owe me?	كَمْ لِي عَلَيْكَ
What is the price of this?	كَمْ هِيَ قِيمَةُ هٰذَا
What o'clock is it now?	كَمْ هِيَ ٱلسَّاعَةُ ٱلْآنَ
How far is it from here?	كَمْ هُوَ ٱلْبُعْدُ مِنْ هُنَا
How old is he?	كَمْ لَهُ مِنَ ٱلْعُمْرِ
Have you any of them?	هَلْ عِنْدَكُمْ مِنْهَا
Is the mistake yours or ours?	هَلِ ٱلْغَلَطُ مِنْكُمْ أَمْ مِنَّا
What is my offence?	مَا هُوَ ذَنْبِي
Is this arrangement good?	أَهٰذَا ٱلتَّرْتِيبُ مُوَافِقٌ
How many seasons are there in the year?	كَمْ فَصْلاً فِي ٱلسَّنَةِ
What is that in the cupboard?	مَا ٱلَّذِي فِي ٱلْخِزَانَةِ
Which of them is most deserving of the prize?	أَيُّهُمْ أَحَقُّ بِٱلْجَائِزَةِ
How many days has this month?	كَمْ يَوْمًا فِي هٰذَا ٱلشَّهْرِ
Have you the address of this gentleman?	هَلْ عِنْدَكُمْ عُنْوَانُ هٰذَا ٱلسَّيِّدِ
Are you fond of music?	هَلْ أَنْتَ مُولَعٌ بِٱلْمُوسِيقَى
Do you admire my horse?	هَلْ أَنْتَ مُعْجَبٌ بِحِصَانِي
What is the meaning of your remark?	مَا مَعْنَى كَلَامِكَ
Are we alone?	هَلْ نَحْنُ فِي خَلْوَةٍ
Are you attracted by it?	هَلْ أَنْتَ مُنْجَذِبٌ بِهِ
What day of the month is it?	فِي أَيِّ يَوْمٍ مِنَ ٱلشَّهْرِ نَحْنُ
How much is this cloth a yard?	بِكَمْ ذِرَاعُ هٰذَا ٱلْجُوخِ

What is the importance of it?	مَا هِيَ أَهَمِّيَّتُهُ
How wide is this room?	كَمْ هُوَ عَرْضُ هٰذِهِ ٱلْغُرْفَةِ
Is the breakfast ready?	هَلِ ٱلْفُطُورُ حَاضِرٌ
How much money have you?	كَمْ مِنَ ٱلدَّرَاهِمِ عِنْدَكَ
What is the character of the king?	مَا هِيَ سَجَايَا ٱلْمَلِكِ

Words for practice :—

tired	مُتْعَبٌ	meaning	مَعْنًى مَعَانٍ	keeper	حَارِسٌ حُرَّاسٌ
work	شُغْلٌ أَشْغَالٌ	question	سُؤَالٌ اتٌ	living	حَيٌّ
intelligent	عَاقِلٌ	lesson	أُمْثُولَةٌ	sin	خَطِيَّةٌ خَطَايَا
ignorant	جَاهِلٌ	hood	قُبَّعَةٌ	ready	مُسْتَعِدٌّ
		standing	قَائِمٌ	servant	خَادِمٌ خُدَّامٌ

Translate :—

أَحَارِسٌ أَنَا لِأَخِي . أَيَّةُ ٱلْكُتُبِ لَكَ . هَلْ أُمُّكَ حَيَّةٌ . مَا هِيَ خَطِيَّتِي إِلَيْكَ . هَلْ مُسْتَعِدٌّ خَادِمُكَ . مَا مَعْنَى سُؤَالِكَ . أَيْنَ أُمْثُولَتُكَ لِهٰذِهِ ٱللَّيْلَةِ . بِكَمْ تِلْكَ ٱلْقُبَّعَةُ . هَلْ مُتْعَبٌ أَنْتَ مِنْ شُغْلِكَ . هَلْ هُوَ عَاقِلٌ أَمْ جَاهِلٌ . هَلْ قَائِمٌ أَخُوكَ

Words for practice :—

amount	مَبْلَغٌ	damp	رَطْبٌ	cold	بَارِدٌ
disease	مَرَضٌ أَمْرَاضٌ	ashamed	مَخْجُولٌ	thirsty	عَطْشَانُ
village	قَرْيَةٌ قُرًى	master	سَيِّدٌ	warm	دَافِئٌ
liked	مَحْبُوبٌ	within	دَاخِلًا	weather	طَقْسٌ
teacher	مُعَلِّمٌ	suit	بَدْلَةٌ	price	قِيمَةٌ قِيَمٌ
		name	إِسْمٌ أَسْمَاءٌ		

Translate:—Are you cold? Are you thirsty? Are you warm? Is the weather damp? Are you ashamed? Are we going? Is this the way? Is your master within? What is the amount? What is the name of the disease? How many houses are there in that village? What is your occupation? Is the teacher liked? Where is he going? What is the price of this suit? Whose is that horse?

Will you do it or not? أَتَعْمَلُهُ أَمْ لَا

Does anyone think so? هَلْ يَظُنُّ أَحَدٌ هٰكَذَا

How much does he send you? كَمْ يُرْسِلُ لَكَ

What has happened to him? مَاذَا صَارَ لَهُ

What books have you read? أَيَّةَ كُتُبٍ قَرَأْتَ

How many soldiers do you see? كَمْ تَرَى مِنَ ٱلْعَسَاكِرِ

Do you speak English? هَلْ تَتَكَلَّمُ ٱلْإِنْكِلِيزِيَّةَ

Which game do you prefer? أَيَّةَ لُعْبَةٍ تُفَضِّلُ

Who struck him? مَنِ ٱلَّذِي ضَرَبَهُ

When did he expire? مَتَى فَاضَتْ رُوحُهُ

Have you not seen my book? أَمَا رَأَيْتَ كِتَابِي

Has he dropped anything? هَلْ وَقَعَ مِنْهُ شَيْءٌ

How much did you pay for him? كَمْ دَفَعْتَ عَنْهُ

How long have you been here? كَمْ مِنَ ٱلزَّمَانِ صَارَ لَكَ هُنَا

How long is it since you heard from him? مُنْذُ أَيِّ وَقْتٍ سَمِعْتَ مِنْهُ

Does this shoe fit you? هَلْ هٰذَا ٱلْحِذَاءُ يُلَائِمُكَ

Where were you the day before yesterday? أَيْنَ كُنْتَ أَوَّلَ ٱلْبَارِحَةِ

Which of them shall I take? أَيَّ وَاحِدٍ مِنْهَا آخُذُ

Why have you delayed until now? لِمَاذَا تَأَخَّرْتَ إِلَى ٱلْآنَ

When does the school reopen? مَتَى تَفْتَحُ ٱلْمَدْرَسَةُ أَبْوَابَهَا

Can you change me a sovereign? هَلْ تَقْدِرُ أَنْ تَصْرِفَ لِي لِيرَا

What is the lowest price you will take? مَا هُوَ أَقَلُّ سِعْرٍ تَطْلُبُهُ

Is it his practice to do it? هَلْ مِنْ عَادَتِهِ أَنْ يَعْمَلَهُ

Do you guarantee this? هَلْ تَضْمَنُ هٰذَا

Are there no letters for me? أَلَا يُوجَدُ لِي رَسَائِلُ

What is it used for? لِأَيِّ شَيْءٍ يُسْتَعْمَلُ

What do you call that? مَاذَا تُسَمِّي ذٰلِكَ

How much does it amount to? كَمْ يَبْلُغُ

Have you done with it? هَلْ خَلَصْتَ مِنْهُ

Why did you go home? لِمَاذَا رَجَعْتَ إِلَى ٱلْبَيْتِ

Whom do you take me to be? مَنْ تَظُنُّ أَنِّي أَنَا

Will you alight here? هَلْ تَنْزِلُ هُنَا

Will you do me a favour? هَلْ تَعْمَلُ مَعِي مَعْرُوفًا

Have you copied your exercises? هَلْ نَسَخْتَ تَمَارِينَكَ

What shall I do with this? مَاذَا أَعْمَلُ بِهٰذَا

Will you kindly help me هَلْ تَتَكَرَّمُ بِمُسَاعَدَتِي

How did the cannon explode? كَيْفَ ٱنْفَجَرَ ٱلْمِدْفَعُ

At what hour do you start to-morrow? أَيَّةَ سَاعَةٍ تُسَافِرُ غَدًا

Which of these boys will obtain the prize? أَيُّ هٰؤُلَاءِ ٱلصِّبْيَانِ يَنَالُ ٱلْجَائِزَةَ

Will you ride this horse or that? هَلْ تَرْكَبُ هٰذَا ٱلْحِصَانَ أَمْ ذَاكَ

Which of the two do you prefer?	أَيَّ ٱلِٱثْنَيْنِ تُفَضِّلُ
Of what do you speak?	عَنْ أَيِّ شَيْءٍ تَتَكَلَّمُ
How often have you seen him?	كَمْ مَرَّةً رَأَيْتَهُ
Which of these books will you take?	أَيَّةَ ٱلْكُتُبِ هٰذِهِ تَأْخُذُ
What has happened to your brother?	مَاذَا صَارَ لِأَخِيكَ
How long have you had that horse?	كَمْ صَارَ لِذَلِكَ ٱلْحِصَانِ عِنْدَكَ
Will you not take something?	أَلَا تَأْخُذُ شَيْئًا
Do you know with whom you speak?	أَتَعْرِفُ مَعَ مَنْ تَتَكَلَّمُ
Do you expect your friends?	هَلْ تَنْتَظِرُ أَصْدِقَاءَكَ
Which way did he go?	أَيَّ طَرِيقٍ ذَهَبَ
Does the water boil?	هَلِ ٱلْمَاءُ يَغْلِي
Where did you find this slate pencil?	أَيْنَ وَجَدْتَ قَلَمَ ٱلرَّصَاصِ هٰذَا
Of whom do you inquire?	عَمَّنْ تَسْأَلُ
With whom does he come?	مَعَ مَنْ يَأْتِي
Where did you spend the evening?	أَيْنَ سَهِرْتَ
Have you cut yourself?	هَلْ جَرَحْتَ ذَاتَكَ
Have you visited the market?	هَلْ نَزَلْتَ إِلَى ٱلسُّوقِ

Words for practice:—

to oppose	قَاوَمَ	to go	ذَهَبَ يَذْهَبُ
to avoid	إِجْتَنَبَ	to remember	ذَكَرَ يَذْكُرُ
to receive	قَبِلَ يَقْبَلُ	to say	قَالَ يَقُولُ
to love	أَحَبَّ	to know	عَرَفَ يَعْرِفُ

to be past	مَضَى يَمْضِي	to find	وَجَدَ يَجِدُ
to read	قَرَأَ يَقْرَأُ	to see	رَأَى يَرَى
to steal	سَرَقَ يَسْرِقُ	to live	عَاشَ يَعِيشُ
friend	صَاحِبٌ أَصْحَابٌ	thing	شَيْءٌ أَشْيَاءُ
commend	أَمْرٌ أَوَامِرُ	time	وَقْتٌ أَوْقَاتٌ
key	مِفْتَاحٌ مَفَاتِيحُ		

Translate:—

أَيْنَ وَجَدْتَ ٱلْمِفْتَاحَ . هَلْ قَرَأْتَ هٰذِهِ ٱلْكُتُبَ ٱلْجَدِيدَةَ . كَمْ مَرَّةً رَأَيْتَ ٱلْمَلِكَ . هَلْ سَرَقُوا شَيْئًا مِنْكَ . هَلْ تَذْكُرُ ذَلِكَ ٱلرَّجُلَ . إِلَى أَيْنَ يَذْهَبُ صَدِيقُنَا . هَلْ يَقُولُ أَخُوكَ شَيْئًا . هَلْ يَعْرِفُ صَاحِبُكَ . مَنْ يُقَاوِمُ أَوَامِرِي . لِمَاذَا تَجْتَنِبُنِي . مِمَّنْ قَبِلْتَ هٰذَا . هَلْ يُحِبُّنَا أَحَدٌ . هَلِ ٱلْوَقْتُ مَضَى . كَمْ سَنَةً يَعِيشُ

Words for practice:—

to dress	لَبِسَ يَلْبَسُ	to flee	هَرَبَ يَهْرُبُ
to be able	قَدِرَ يَقْدِرُ	to seek	طَلَبَ يَطْلُبُ
to swim	سَبَحَ يَسْبَحُ	to understand	فَهِمَ يَفْهَمُ
to drink	شَرِبَ يَشْرَبُ	to dwell	سَكَنَ يَسْكُنُ
to hear	سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ	to believe	صَدَّقَ
to do	عَمِلَ يَعْمَلُ	to happen	حَدَثَ يَحْدُثُ
to stay	مَكَثَ يَمْكُثُ	to say	قَالَ يَقُولُ
to break	كَسَرَ يَكْسِرُ	so	هٰكَذَا
servant	خَادِمٌ خُدَّامٌ	boy	غُلَامٌ غِلْمَانٌ

Translate:—What are you doing? What has happened? Where did he stay? Did he say so? What did he say? Why did he fly? Whom do you seek? Do you understand? Where do you dwell? Have you dressed? Can you swim? Why do you not drink? What has your boy broken? Do you believe that? Does the servant hear?

Words for practice:—

to wish	أَرَادَ يُرِيدُ	to rise	قَامَ يَقُومُ
to find	وَجَدَ يَجِدُ	to take	أَخَذَ يَأْخُذُ
to choose	إِخْتَارَ	to strike	ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ
to come	أَتَى يَأْتِي	to speak	تَكَلَّمَ
to remember	ذَكَرَ يَذْكُرُ	to carry	حَمَلَ يَحْمِلُ
to do	فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ	to bark	نَبَحَ يَنْبَحُ
to write	كَتَبَ يَكْتُبُ	to stay	بَقِيَ يَبْقَى
to deceive	خَدَعَ يَخْدَعُ	when	أَيَّ وَقْتٍ

Translate:—Why did he do this? Did the dog bark? To whom do you write? Has he risen? What did he take? Who struck him? What do you wish? What have you found? Why do you choose? Why do you stay? Why did you speak? Whence came they? Why did you deceive me? When does he come? What does he carry? Does he remember her?

THE RELATIVE SENTENCE. صِلَةُ ٱلْمَوْصُولِ

The relative sentence consists of four parts, (*a*) the antecedent, (*b*) the relative, (*c*) the clause صِلَة (*d*) the pronoun referring to the antecedent عَائِد.

This is the man whom I struck هٰذَا هُوَ ٱلرَّجُلُ ٱلَّذِي ضَرَبْتُهُ

d & c *b* *a*

These are the cities which they built هٰذِهِ هِيَ ٱلْمُدُنُ ٱلَّتِي بَنَوْهَا

NOTE:—The article is used with the noun of agent and object as a relative pronoun, as:—

He who acquires wisdom loves himself	اَلْمُقْتَنِي ٱلْحِكْمَةَ يُحِبُّ نَفْسَهُ

The reason why he did it was urgent	اَلسَّبَبُ ٱلَّذِي لِأَجْلِهِ فَعَلَهُ كَانَ مُهِمًّا
The time when we start is fixed	اَلْوَقْتُ ٱلَّذِي فِيهِ نُسَافِرُ مُعَيَّنٌ
It is a fact about which there is no doubt	هُوَ ٱلْحَقِيقَةُ ٱلَّتِي لَا رَيْبَ فِيهَا
The village in which he lives is picturesque	اَلضَّيْعَةُ ٱلَّتِي فِيهَا يَسْكُنُ جَمِيلَةٌ
We do not know what you propose	لَا نَعْرِفُ مَاذَا تَقْصِدُ
This is what I wish	هٰذَا مَا أُرِيدُ
Great is he who does not err	جَلَّ مَنْ لَا يَسْهُو
He knew who did it	عَرَفَ مَنْ فَعَلَهُ
I know what I need	أَعْرِفُ مَاذَا أَحْتَاجُ
We who did this are present	نَحْنُ ٱلَّذِينَ فَعَلْنَا هٰذَا حَاضِرُونَ
This is exactly what I wanted	هٰذَا مَا أَرَدْتُهُ تَمَامًا
The place to which we go is unknown	اَلْمَكَانُ ٱلَّذِي نَذْهَبُ إِلَيْهِ غَيْرُ مَعْرُوفٍ
I will pay what I owe	أُوفِي مَا عَلَيَّ
Take whichever you wish	خُذْ أَيًّا تَشَاءُ
These are the states which Saladin conquered	هٰذِهِ ٱلْوِلَايَاتُ ٱلَّتِي فَتَحَهَا صَلَاحُ ٱلدِّينِ
I am he whom you seek	أَنَا هُوَ ٱلَّذِي تَطْلُبُهُ
I know what I can do	أَعْرِفُ مَا أَقْدِرُ عَلَيْهِ
Do not let that please you which is unlawful	لَا تُسَرَّ بِٱلَّذِي لَا يَحِلُّ
Fight with those who do not believe in God	قَاتِلُوا ٱلَّذِينَ لَا يُؤْمِنُونَ بِٱللهِ
I will see what can be done to help you	أَنْظُرُ فِيمَا يُمْكِنُ أَنْ يُعْمَلَ لِمُسَاعَدَتِكَ

I am he who will rule after you	أَنَا ٱلَّذِي أَتَوَلَّى بَعْدَكَ
Who is he that will intercede with Him except by His permission	مَنْ ذَا ٱلَّذِي يَشْفَعُ عِنْدَهُ إِلَّا بِإِذْنِهِ

Words for practice :—

sword	سَيْفٌ سُيُوفٌ	ship	مَرْكَبٌ مَرَاكِبُ	profitable	نَافِعٌ
difficult	صَعْبٌ	machine	آلَةٌ ات	planet	سَيَّارَةٌ ات
prisoner	مَسْجُونٌ	round	مُسْتَدِيرٌ		
to invent	إِخْتَرَعَ	to sail	أَقْلَعَ	to buy	إِشْتَرَى
to speak	تَكَلَّمَ	to begin	إِبْتَدَأَ	to remain	بَقِيَ يَبْقَى

Translate :—

أَلْكِتَابُ ٱلَّذِي ٱشْتَرَيْتُهُ نَافِعٌ . قَدْ ذَهَبَ ٱلْوَلَدُ ٱلَّذِي تَكَلَّمْتُ عَنْهُ . هٰذَا هُوَ ٱلْمَرْكَبُ ٱلَّذِي أَقْلَعْتُ فِيهِ . أَلْعَمَلُ ٱلَّذِي ٱبْتَدَأْنَاهُ صَعْبٌ . أَلرَّجُلُ ٱلَّذِي ٱخْتَرَعَ ٱلْآلَةَ صَارَ غَنِيًّا . أَرَى ٱلْإِنْسَانَ ٱلَّذِي قَتَلَ أَخُوهُ كَلْبِي . قَتَلُوا بِسُيُوفِهِمْ كُلَّ ٱلَّذِينَ بَقُوا فِي ٱلْمَدِينَةِ . أُرْسِلَ ٱلْمَسْجُونُ إِلَى ٱلْمَحَلِّ ٱلَّذِي مِنْهُ أَتَى . إِشْتَرَيْتُ ٱلْحِصَانَ ٱلَّذِي تَكَلَّمْتُ عَنْهُ . سَأَلَنِي عَمَّا وَجَدَ . أَرَى ٱلرَّجُلَ ٱلَّذِي مَاتَ ٱبْنُهُ . أَلْأَرْضُ ٱلَّتِي نَحْنُ سَاكِنُونَ عَلَيْهَا سَيَّارَةٌ مُسْتَدِيرَةٌ

Words for practice :—

harbour	مِينَاءٌ مَوَانٍ	yesterday	أَلْبَارِحَةَ	reason	سَبَبٌ أَسْبَابٌ
fruit	فَاكِهَةٌ فَوَاكِهُ	hill	تَلَّةٌ تِلَالٌ	secret	سِرٌّ أَسْرَارٌ
to bite	عَضَّ يَعَضُّ	to meet	إِلْتَقَى بِ	to ride	رَكِبَ يَرْكَبُ
to mean	قَصَدَ يَقْصِدُ	to like	أَحَبَّ	to leave	تَرَكَ يَتْرُكُ
to dwell	سَكَنَ يَسْكُنُ	to lose	فَقَدَ يَفْقِدُ	to be wrecked	إِنْكَسَرَ
to find	وَجَدَ يَجِدُ	to create	خَلَقَ يَخْلُقُ		

Translate:—The reason why I ride is secret. The ship which left the harbour yesterday was wrecked. The man whom we met was my brother. The house from which he comes stands on the hill. The man whom you saw was a general. This is the fruit which I like. This is the dog which bit the child. I have heard what you said. He says what he means and means what he says. Do you know who created you? The book which was lost is found. This is the house he lives in. What is the cause wherefore ye are come? See what I have written.

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

THE ABSOLUTE OBJECT. أَلْمَفْعُولُ الْمُطْلَقُ

I. أَلْمُؤَكِّدُ *that which assures,* is the noun of action of the same verb and simply strengthens its meaning, as:—

I assuredly struck him ضَرَبْتُهُ ضَرْبًا

II. أَلْمُبَيِّنُ *that which makes manifest,* this noun of action is used to express number and form and it may be made dual or plural.

The place of the noun of action may be taken by كُلّ and بَعْض when in construction with a noun of action or by a demonstrative pronoun, an adjective, numeral, مَا and أَيّ particles of interrogation.

THE ABSOLUTE OBJECT.

Patiently, do not hurry	(أَمْهِلْ) مَهْلًا
He slept a sound sleep	نَامَ نَوْمًا ثَقِيلًا
He prayed an earnest prayer	صَلَّى صَلَاةً حَارَّةً
He sighed a deep sigh	تَنَهَّدَ تَنَهُّدًا عَمِيقًا
He died a sad death	مَاتَ مَوْتًا مُحْزِنًا

* In many familiar expressions the verb is implied.

He lived a long life	عَاشَ عِيشَةً طَوِيلَةً
He fought a hard battle	عَارَكَ عِرَاكًا شَدِيدًا
He struck a deadly blow	ضَرَبَ ضَرْبَةً مُمِيتَةً
He made a foolish mistake	غَلِطَ غَلْطَةً بَارِدَةً
They shouted very loudly	صَرَخُوا صُرَاخًا عَالِيًا
They feared exceedingly	خَافُوا خَوْفًا عَظِيمًا
She wept bitterly	بَكَتْ بُكَاءً مُرًّا
He gave him a valuable gift	وَهَبَهُ هِبَةً ثَمِينَةً
The minstrel sang a merry song	أَلْعَوَّادُ رَنَّمَ تَرْنِيمَةً مُطْرِبَةً
She dances beautifully	تَرْقُصُ رَقْصًا جَمِيلاً
They rejoice with great joy	يَفْرَحُونَ فَرَحًا عَظِيمًا
He loved her exceedingly	أَحَبَّهَا حُبًّا شَدِيدًا
The lion was fatally wounded	جُرِحَ ٱلْأَسَدُ جُرْحًا مُمِيتًا
The judge asked the prisoner one question	سَأَلَ ٱلْقَاضِي ٱلسَّجِينَ سُؤَالاً وَاحِدًا
We sing songs of praise	نُرَنِّمُ تَرْنِيمَاتِ ٱلْحَمْدِ
They all laughed loudly at him	أَلْكُلُّ ضَحِكُوا عَلَيْهِ ضِحْكَةً عَالِيَةً
Let me die the death of the righteous	لِتَمُتْ نَفْسِي مَوْتَ ٱلْأَبْرَارِ
He was exceedingly astonished	تَعَجَّبَ غَايَةَ ٱلتَّعَجُّبِ
He made a great feast for them	أَوْلَمَ لَهُمْ وَلِيمَةً عَظِيمَةً
I purpose taking that journey	أَقْصِدُ أَنْ أُسَافِرَ تِلْكَ ٱلسَّفْرَةَ
They managed in the best manner possible	دَبَّرُوا أَحْسَنَ تَدْبِيرٍ
I fought a good fight	جَاهَدْتُ ٱلْجِهَادَ ٱلْحَسَنَ

He spoke in an earnest manner	سَلَكَ فِي كَلَامِهِ مَسْلَكَ ٱلْجِدِّ
Judge righteous judgment	إِقْضُوا قَضَاءَ ٱلْحَقِّ
They stood in a soldierly manner	وَقَفُوا ٱلْوَقْفَةَ ٱلْعَسْكَرِيَّةَ
I knew him a little	عَرَفْتُهُ بَعْضَ ٱلْمَعْرِفَةِ
The regiment fought well	أَبْلَتِ ٱلْفِرْقَةُ بَلَاءً حَسَنًا
I blamed him exceedingly	لُمْتُهُ كُلَّ ٱللَّوْمِ

Words for practice:—

to obey	أَطَاعَ	welcome	مَرْحَبًا	pleasantly	هَنِيئًا
to praise	سَبَّحَ	to honour	أَكْرَمَ	to depart	إِنْطَلَقَ

to seek protection عَاذَ يَعُوذُ

Translate:—

أَسْمَعُ سَمْعًا . أُطِيعُ طَاعَةً . أُحِبُّهُ حُبًّا. أُكْرِمُكَ إِكْرَامًا . إِنْطَلَقَ ٱنْطِلَاقًا .
مَعَاذَ ٱللهِ . سُبْحَانَ ٱللهِ . أَحْبَبْتُهُ كُلَّ ٱلْمَحَبَّةِ . مَرْحَبًا بِكَ . هَنِيئًا لَكَ

THE ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND PLACE أَلْمَفْعُولُ فِيهِ.

(I) The noun of time whether definite or indefinite is put in the accusative, as:—

I was absent yesterday	كُنْتُ غَائِبًا ٱلْبَارِحَةَ
The army marched night and day	سَارَ ٱلْجَيْشُ لَيْلًا وَنَهَارًا

(II) The noun of place when indefinite is put in the accusative and when definite the preposition فِي is introduced, as:—

I looked east and west, north and south	تَطَلَّعْتُ شَرْقًا وَغَرْبًا شَمَالًا وَجَنُوبًا
I prayed in the mosque	صَلَّيْتُ فِي ٱلْجَامِعِ

(III) The place of the adverb may be taken by (*a*) the noun of action, (*b*) demonstrative pronoun, (*c*) adjective, (*d*) numeral, (*e*) كُلّ and بَعْض

He gave him three days' grace	أَمْهَلَهُ ثَلَاثَةَ أَيَّامٍ
Stand where you are	قِفْ عِنْدَكَ
He arrived the day before yesterday	وَصَلَ أَوَّلَ ٱلْبَارِحَةِ
He stood before him	مَثَلَ بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ
Seize the opportunity before it passes	إِغْتَنِمِ ٱلْفُرْصَةَ قَبْلَ فَوَاتِهَا
It rained the whole way	أَمْطَرَتْ كُلَّ ٱلطَّرِيقِ
Give them according to their work	أَعْطِهِمْ حَسَبَ فِعْلِهِمْ
He walks behind the rest	يَمْشِي وَرَاءَ ٱلْبَقِيَّةِ
I have played at it often	قَدْ لَعِبْتُ بِهِ مِرَارًا
We will embark on Wednesday	نَنْزِلُ ٱلسَّفِينَةَ يَوْمَ ٱلْأَرْبِعَاءِ
They called us a number of times	نَادَوْنَا عِدَّةَ مَرَّاتٍ
The tent was pitched before the walls	ضُرِبَتِ ٱلْخَيْمَةُ أَمَامَ ٱلْأَسْوَارِ
I started when he arrived	سَافَرْتُ عِنْدَ قُدُومِهِ
I saw him last week	رَأَيْتُهُ ٱلْأُسْبُوعَ ٱلْمَاضِيَ
I rise at daybreak	أَنْهَضُ طُلُوعَ ٱلْفَجْرِ
The banns were published thrice	أُشْهِرَتِ ٱلْخُطْبَةُ ثَلَاثًا مِنَ ٱلْمِنْبَرِ
The army encamped outside the city	حَلَّ ٱلْجَيْشُ خَارِجَ ٱلْمَدِينَةِ
Send for him	أَرْسِلْ وَرَاءَهُ
I will include my brothers among the rest	أَشْمُلُ إِخْوَتِي بَيْنَ ٱلْآخَرِينَ
I will return the money after ten days	أَرُدُّ ٱلدَّرَاهِمَ بَعْدَ عَشَرَةِ أَيَّامٍ

The moon rose after the sun had set	طَلَعَ ٱلْقَمَرُ بَعْدَ مَا غَابَتِ ٱلشَّمْسُ
He stayed in prison a few years	لَبِثَ فِي ٱلسِّجْنِ بِضْعَ سِنِينَ
He travelled round the world	دَارَ حَوْلَ ٱلْعَالَمِ
He came when it was too late	جَاءَ بَعْدَ ذَهَابِ ٱلْفُرْصَةِ
We will dine at home to-day	نَتَغَدَّى فِي ٱلْبَيْتِ ٱلْيَوْمَ
He soon attained proficiency in the business	حَالاً مَهَرَ فِي ٱلشُّغْلِ
We travelled through the night	سِرْنَا جَوْفَ ٱللَّيْلِ
I spent the whole of the day in the place	قَضَيْتُ فِي ٱلْمَكَانِ سَحَابَةَ ٱلنَّهَارِ
We conversed together for an hour	تَحَادَثْنَا سَاعَةً
He has been with me all these years	كَانَ عِنْدِي طُولَ هٰذِهِ ٱلسِّنِينَ
I retired late but I rose early	نِمْتُ مُتَأَخِّرًا وَلٰكِنِّي قُمْتُ بَاكِرًا
I prostrated myself before him	قَبَّلْتُ ٱلْأَرْضَ بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ
He was absent from us a whole year	غَابَ عَنَّا سَنَةً كَامِلَةً
He took two steps backwards	رَجَعَ خُطْوَتَيْنِ إِلَى ٱلْوَرَاءِ
He takes a walk daily	يَتَنَزَّهُ مَرَّةً فِي ٱلْيَوْمِ
He took it after he had given it	أَخَذَهُ بَعْدَ أَنْ أَعْطَاهُ
I saw him a few times	رَأَيْتُهُ بِضْعَ مَرَّاتٍ
He turned his face towards the door	حَوَّلَ وَجْهَهُ نَحْوَ ٱلْبَابِ
Let us sit in the shade	لِنَجْلِسْ تَحْتَ ٱلظِّلِّ
How did you spend last night?	كَيْفَ قَضَيْتَ لَيْلَتَكَ ٱلْبَارِحَةَ
His arrest was effected yesterday	جَرَى إِلْقَاءُ ٱلْقَبْضِ عَلَيْهِ ٱلْبَارِحَةَ
I sat where the prince sat	جَلَسْتُ حَيْثُ جَلَسَ ٱلْأَمِيرُ

I came when Zaid came	جِئْتُ إِذْ جَاءَ زَيْدٌ
Do not separate me from my child	لَا تُفَرِّقْ بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَ ٱبْنِي
He mentioned the matter to me yesterday	ذَكَرَ لِيَ ٱلْقَضِيَّةَ ٱلْبَارِحَةَ
He will be there either to-day or to-morrow	يَكُونُ هُنَاكَ إِمَّا ٱلْيَوْمَ أَوْ غَدًا
I fired at him several times	أَطْلَقْتُ عَلَيْهِ ٱلرَّصَاصَ مَرَّاتٍ مُتَوَالِيَةً
Perhaps he will return on Tuesday next	رُبَّمَا يَرْجِعُ يَوْمَ ٱلثُّلَاثَاءِ ٱلْقَادِمَ
He stood motionless a few minutes	وَقَفَ بِلَا حَرَكَةٍ بِضْعَ دَقَائِقَ
We breakfast at eight o'clock	نَتَنَاوَلُ ٱلْفُطُورَ ٱلسَّاعَةَ ٱلثَّامِنَةَ صَبَاحًا
Dissension arose between the two brothers	قَدْ صَارَ شِقَاقٌ بَيْنَ ٱلْأَخَوَيْنِ

Words for practice:—

arm	ذِرَاعٌ أَذْرُعٌ	entrance	مَدْخَلٌ مَدَاخِلُ
street	شَارِعٌ شَوَارِعُ	above	فَوْقَ
obsequies	مَأْتَمٌ	distance	مِقْدَارٌ مَقَادِيرُ
when	حِينَمَا	bridge	جِسْرٌ جُسُورٌ
step	خُطْوَةٌ	at	عِنْدَ
where	أَيْنَ	midnight	نِصْفُ ٱللَّيْلِ
slowly	رُوَيْدًا	before	قَبْلُ
to repeat	أَعَادَ	to observe, stay	أَقَامَ
to be elevated	إِرْتَفَعَ	to cross	إِجْتَازَ
to go round	دَارَ يَدُورُ	to shine	تَلَأْلَأَ

to be present حَضَرَ يَحْضُرُ

Translate :—

وَقَفَ عِنْدَ ٱلْمَدْخَلِ. أَعْرِفُ أَيْنَ يَسْكُنُ. سَارُوا رُوَيْدًا فِي ٱلشَّوَارِعِ. نَزَلَ خُطْوَةً بَعْدَ خُطْوَةٍ. أَلْأَرْضُ تَدُورُ حَوْلَ ٱلشَّمْسِ مَرَّةً فِي ٱلسَّنَةِ. أَقَامُوا ٱلْمَأْتَمَ سَبعةَ أَيَّامٍ. إِجْتَزْنَا ٱلْجِسْرَ عِنْدَ نِصْفِ ٱللَّيْلِ. تَتَلَأْلَأُ ٱلنُّجُومُ فَوْقَنَا. أَعَادَتِ ٱلْقَوْلَ ثَلَاثَ مَرَّاتٍ. إِرْتَفَعَ عَنِ ٱلْأَرْضِ مِقْدَارَ ذِرَاعٍ. كَانَ يَقْرَأُ ٱلْغُلَامُ حِينَمَا حَضَرَ سَيِّدُهُ. جِئْتُ قَبْلُ

Words for practice :—

immediately	حَالًا	now	أَلْآنَ
among	بَيْنَ	much, many	كَثِيرٌ ون
sometimes	أَحْيَانًا	few	بِضْعَةٌ
last night	لَيْلَةَ ٱلْبَارِحَةِ	before	سَابِقًا
profit	رِبْحٌ	yesterday	أَمْسِ. ٱلْبَارِحَةَ
late	مُتَأَخِّرًا	first	أَوَّلًا
to-morrow	غَدًا	behind	وَرَاءَ
to live	عَاشَ يَعِيشُ	to fall	سَقَطَ يَسْقُطُ
to retire	نَامَ يَنَامُ	to travel	سَافَرَ
to sit	جَلَسَ يَجْلِسُ	to stand	وَقَفَ يَقِفُ
to repent	نَدِمَ يَنْدَمُ	to divide	قَسَمَ يَقْسِمُ
to arrive	وَصَلَ يَصِلُ	to happen	حَدَثَ يَحْدُثُ

Translate :—You will return late. He will arrive first. I will go to-morrow. I have seen him before. Stand behind him. Sit here. He thinks so now. The ship sailed yesterday. He lived many years. He will return in a few days. He repented immediately. I divided the profit among them. I go there

sometimes. We walked three miles. Rain fell last night. It happened yesterday. I will come to-morrow. He came once. I saw him yesterday. Have you seen him previously? He wishes to travel to-morrow. Do you retire early? Do you know where my father is?

Words for practice :—

captive	أَسِيرٌ أَسْرَى	morning	بُكْرَةٌ	before	قَبْلَمَا
idolater	مُشْرِكٌ	before noon	ضَحْوَةٌ	door, gate	بَوَّابَةٌ
where	حَيْثُ	evening	عَشِيَّةٌ	recompense	جَزَاءٌ
		watchman	رَقِيبٌ		
to remain	بَقِيَ يَبْقَى	to kill	قَتَلَ يَقْتُلُ	to obtain	نَالَ يَنَالُ
to find	وَجَدَ يَجِدُ	to put to death	تَوَفَّى	to return	عَادَ يَعُودُ

Translate :—

رَأَيْنَاكُمْ قَبْلَمَا وَصَلْنَا ٱلْبَوَّابَةَ . وَصَلْنَا ٱلْمَدِينَةَ ضَحْوَةَ يَوْمِ ٱلْخَمِيسِ . صَارَتْ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ تَأْتِيهِ بُكْرَةً وَعَشِيَّةً . سَارُوا مُدَّةَ سِتَّةِ أَشْهُرٍ . اُقْتُلُوا ٱلْمُشْرِكِينَ حَيْثُ وَجَدْتُمُوهُمْ . أَلشِّرِّيرُ يَنَالُ جَزَاءَهُ عَاجِلاً أَوْ آجِلاً . عَادَتْ عِنْدَ ٱلصُّبْحِ . لَمَّا تَوَفَّيْتَنِي كُنْتَ أَنْتَ ٱلرَّقِيبَ عَلَيْهِمْ . بَقِيَتِ ٱلْأَسْرَى أَيَّامًا كَثِيرَةً فِي ٱلْمَدِينَةِ

Words for practice :—

sentry	خَفِيرٌ خُفَرَاءُ	distance	مَسَافَةٌ	time	مُدَّةٌ
at	عِنْدَ	after	بَعْدَ	round	حَوْلَ
always	دَائِمًا	early	بَاكِرًا	where	حَيْثُ
never	أَبَدًا	to-morrow	غَدًا	few	بِضْعَةٌ
camp	مَحَلَّةٌ	exactly	تَمَامًا	there	هُنَاكَ
		seat	مَقْعَدٌ مَقَاعِدُ		

to wake أَيْقَظَ to speak تَكَلَّمَ to gather إِجْتَمَعَ

to be كَانَ يَكُونُ to lie كَذَبَ يَكْذِبُ to wait إِنْتَظَرَ

to put جَعَلَ يَجْعَلُ

Translate:—I waited a long time. The men gathered round him. They are sitting where we left them. We remained in the camp a few days. We went a long distance. We remained after he had left. Wake me early. We will be with you to-morrow. They arrived before we left. Speak the truth always. Never lie. There stood the sentry. I was there before he came. He came after I left. We do not know exactly where we shall go. He sits all the day in the house. Place it under the seat.

THE ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE OF STATE OR CONDITION.

أَلْحَالُ

This shows the state of the agent or the object at the time of the action of the verb. It may be

(*a*) an indefinite derived adjective, as:—

He mentioned the matter indirectly ذَكَرَ ٱلْخَبَرَ مُلَمِّحًا

(*b*) a sentence or quasi sentence, as:—

Zaid came running جَاءَ زَيْدٌ يَرْكُضُ

I journeyed while the men were sleeping سَافَرْتُ وَٱلنَّاسُ نِيَامٌ

He swam across the river قَطَعَ ٱلنَّهْرَ سَابِحًا

The time passes swiftly أَلْوَقْتُ يَمُرُّ مُسْرِعًا

He went out regardless of his surroundings خَرَجَ لَا يَلْوِي عَلَى شَيْءٍ

I composed the poetry when I was a boy نَظَمْتُ ٱلشِّعْرَ وَأَنَا صَبِيٌّ

They embarked with all their goods نَزَلُوا فِي ٱلسَّفِينَةِ وَمَعَهُمْ كُلُّ أَمْتِعَتِهِمْ

She fell to the ground in a faint وَقَعَتْ عَلَى ٱلْأَرْضِ مَغْشِيًّا عَلَيْهَا

The envoys arrived with the conditions of peace	وَصَلَ ٱلرُّسُلُ وَمَعَهُمْ شُرُوطُ ٱلِاتِّفَاقِ
I spoke to him face to face	كَلَّمْتُهُ وَجْهًا لِوَجْهٍ
He will conquer in spite of all opposition	يَغْلِبُ رَغْمًا عَنْ كُلِّ ٱلْمَوَانِعِ
He spent a restless night	بَاتَ لَيْلَتَهُ قَلِقَ ٱلْوِسَادِ
They came in bewilderment	أَتَوْا مُنْذَهِلِينَ
They went straight home	ذَهَبُوا تَوًّا إِلَى ٱلْبَيْتِ
He rowed across the lake	قَطَعَ ٱلْبُحَيْرَةَ مُجَذِّفًا
The pastures appear very fertile	تَظْهَرُ ٱلْمُرُوجُ مُخْصِبَةً جِدًّا
He entered looking to the right and left	دَخَلَ وَهُوَ يَتَلَفَّتُ يَمِينًا وَشِمَالًا
I walked without a companion	سِرْتُ وَلَا رَفِيقَ مَعِي
He journeyed in that condition	سَافَرَ وَهُوَ عَلَى تِلْكَ ٱلْحَالَةِ
He inherited the power from his ancestors	وَرِثَ ٱلْإِمَارَةَ أَبًا عَنْ جَدٍّ

Words for practice :—

bound	مُوثَقٌ	weapon	سِلَاحٌ أَسْلِحَةٌ
behind	خَلْفَ	to be gathered	اِجْتَمَعَ
bewildered	مَذْعُورًا	to appoint a king	مَلَّكَ يُمَلِّكُ
to inherit	وَرِثَ يَرِثُ	accidentally	عَرَضًا
to wake	هَبَّ يَهُبُّ	safely	سَالِمًا
cheerful	طَلْقُ ٱلْمُحَيَّا	sorrowful	حَزِينًا
perplexed	مَبْهُوتٌ	to happen	حَدَثَ يَحْدُثُ
willingly	رَاضِيًا	to rejoice at	اِسْتَبْشَرَ

to help سَاعَدَ

Translate:—

حَدَثَ عَرَضًا . وَصَلُوا سَالِمِينَ . خَرَجَ حَزِينًا . جَلَسَ مَبْهُوتًا . رَأَيْتُهُ طَلْقَ ٱلْمُحَيَّا . سَاعَدْتُهُ رَاضِيًا . جِيءَ بِهِ مُوثَقًا . هَبَّ مِنْ نَوْمِهِ مَذْعُورًا . خَرَجَتْ وَأَنَا خَلْفَهَا . جَاءَ أَهْلُ ٱلْمَدِينَةِ يَسْتَبْشِرُونَ . إِجْتَمَعُوا يَمْلِكُونَ عَلَيْهِمْ رَجُلًا . وَقَفَ ٱلسُّعَاةُ وَسِلَاحُ كُلِّ وَاحِدٍ بِيَدِهِ

Words for practice:—

cheaply	رَخِيصًا	high	مُرْتَفِعًا
distinctly	وَاضِحًا	to fly	طَارَ يَطِيرُ
upright	مُنْتَصِبًا	to remain	بَقِيَ يَبْقَى
to sing	غَرَّدَ	mockingly	هُزْأَةً
to meet	إِلْتَقَى بِ	sorrowful	حَزِينًا
suddenly	بَغْتَةً	well	جَيِّدًا
in vain	عَبَثًا	to recite	تَلَا يَتْلُو
	to labour	تَعِبَ يَتْعَبُ	

Translate:—He spoke mockingly. He went forth sorrowful. We heard him speaking. This event happened suddenly. Why do I labour in vain? The bird flies high. We sold cheaply. We heard the noise distinctly. She stood upright. He remained standing. I heard the bird singing. I met him whilst I was returning to the house. He knew well who did it.

THE ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE OF CAUSE OR REASON.

أَلْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ

This expresses the cause of the action of the verb. It is a noun of action but not of the same verb, and is indefinite.

He acts from jealousy	يَعْمَلُ غَيْرَةً
He married for love	تَزَوَّجَ حُبًّا

He was prompted by envy	تَهَيَّجَ حَسَدًا
My heart beats for joy	قَلْبِي يَخْفِقُ سُرُورًا
I did it in remembrance of him	عَمِلْتُهُ تَذْكَارًا لَهُ
He went instead of his cousin	ذَهَبَ عِوَضًا عَنِ ٱبْنِ أَخِيهِ
He did that according to his wont	فَعَلَ ذَٰلِكَ جَرْيًا عَلَى عَادَتِهِ
They all rose to welcome him	قَامَ لَهُ ٱلْجَمِيعُ ٱحْتِفَالاً وَ إِجْلاَلاً

THE SPECIFICATION أَلتَّمْيِيزُ

أَلتَّمْيِيزُ is the indefinite noun which limits or defines the predicate. This indefiniteness of the predicate has respect to نِسْبَة relation or ذَات substance, weight or measure.

The cardinal numbers from 11 to 99 take the object numbered in the accusative singular, as:— تَمْيِيزُ ٱلعَدَدِ the specification of number.

How honourable a man is Zaid!	مَا أَكْرَمَ زَيْدًا رَجُلاً
Fill your horn with oil	إِمْلَأْ قَرْنَكَ دُهْنًا
He walked twenty miles	مَشَى عِشْرِينَ مِيلاً
I was the least of them as to age	كُنْتُ أَنَا أَصْغَرَهُمْ سِنًّا
The question became more complicated and obscure	إِزْدَادَتِ ٱلْمَسْأَلَةُ تَعَقُّدًا وَ إِشْكَالاً
The glass is full of water	أَلزُّجَاجَةُ مَلْآنَةٌ مَاءً
How populous the city is!	مَا أَعْظَمَ ٱلْمَدِينَةَ سُكَّانًا
Say not within yourselves we have Abraham as our father	لاَ تَقُولُوا فِي أَنْفُسِكُمْ لَنَا إِبْرَاهِيمُ أَبًا
He burned with anger	إِسْتَشَاطَ غَضَبًا
He reigned seventy years	أَقَامَ فِي ٱلْمُلْكِ سَبْعِينَ عَامًا

swifter in motion	أَسْرَعُ حَرَكَةً	more numerous	أَكْثَرُ عَدَدًا
less in size	أَصْغَرُ جُثَّةً	less bulky	أَقَلُّ ضَخَامَةً
younger	أَكْثَرُ حَدَاثَةً	more angry	أَشَدُّ غَضَبًا

Words for practice :—

wheat	قَمْحٌ	to suffice	كَفَى بِ
witness	شَهِيدٌ شُهَدَاءُ	a loaf of bread	رَغِيفُ خُبْزٍ

to spend the evening سَهِرَ يَسْهَرُ

Translate :—

عِنْدَنَا رَغِيفَانِ خُبْزًا . زَرَعْنَا ٱلْأَرْضَ قَمْحًا . كَفَى بِٱللهِ شَهِيدًا . كَمْ لَيْلَةً سَهِرْتَ عِنْدَ أَصْدِقَائِكَ

THE VOCATIVE PARTICLES.

أَدَوَاتُ ٱلنِّدَاءِ

The vocative particles are :—

يَا most common أَيْ هَيَا أَيَا and أَ

When the noun following the vocative particle is in construction, or governing another noun or indefinite, it takes the accusative case, as :—

Oh prince of the believers	يَا أَمِيرَ ٱلْمُؤْمِنِينَ
Oh climber of a mountain	يَا طَالِعًا جَبَلًا
Oh man	يَا رَجُلًا

When the noun addressed is definite it takes ـُ as :— يَا زَيْدُ Oh Zaid

When the noun addressed has the article أَيُّ with هَا is introduced, as :—Oh man أَيُّهَا ٱلْإِنْسَانُ

Oh woman أَيَّتُهَا ٱلْمَرْأَةُ

Oh watchman, what of the night?	يَا حَارِسُ مَا مِنَ ٱللَّيْلِ
Oh king, live for ever	أَيُّهَا ٱلْمَلِكُ عِشْ إِلَى ٱلْأَبَدِ
Oh men, serve your Lord	يَا أَيُّهَا ٱلنَّاسُ ٱعْبُدُوا رَبَّكُمْ
Oh children of Israel, remember My favour.	يَا بَنِي إِسْرَائِيلَ ٱذْكُرُوا نِعْمَتِي
Oh prophet, strive with the unbelievers	يَا أَيُّهَا ٱلنَّبِيُّ جَاهِدِ ٱلْكُفَّارَ

PARTICLES OF EXCEPTION

أَدَوَاتُ ٱلِاسْتِثْنَاءِ

These are :— إِلَّا ، غَيْرُ ، سِوَى ، عَدَا ، خَلَا ، حَاشَا

The most commonly used is إِلَّا which puts the noun excepted in the accusative unless the preceding clause is negative or interrogative when the word excepted may be in the nominative, as :—

The people did not come but the hermit (came)	مَا جَاءَ ٱلنَّاسُ إِلَّا ٱلنَّاسِكُ
The apostle has only to declare his message	مَا عَلَى ٱلرَّسُولِ إِلَّا ٱلْبَلَاغُ
We only sent you as an apostle and a warner	مَا أَرْسَلْنَاكَ إِلَّا مُبَشِّرًا وَنَذِيرًا
The undertaking only met with failure	لَمْ يُصَادِفِ ٱلْمَشْرُوعُ إِلَّا خَيْبَةً

خَلَا حَاشَا and عَدَا may be considered as verbs or prepositions.

As verbs they put the noun excepted in the accusative. If مَا is prefixed to them they are then regarded as verbs, as :—

The men came except the horseman جَاءَ ٱلرِّجَالُ مَا عَدَا ٱلْفَارِسَ

سِوَى غَيْرُ are put in construction with the noun excepted and themselves take the same case as the noun when excepted after إِلَّا as :—

The people came except Zaid	جَاءَ ٱلْقَوْمُ غَيْرَ زَيْدٍ
Nothing but the truth endures	لَا يَثْبُتُ غَيْرُ ٱلْحَقِّ

INCOMPLETE VERBS أَلْأَفْعَالُ ٱلنَّاقِصَةُ

These verbs require more than the subject to complete their meaning. The subject أَلْإِسْمُ takes the nominative case, the predicate أَلْخَبَرُ the accusative.

To be	كَانَ	To become	صَارَ

To be or do something in the morning * أَصْبَحَ

To be or do something before noon * أَضْحَى

To be or do something in the evening * أَمْسَى

To be or do something in the night * بَاتَ

To continue	ظَلَّ	He did not cease	مَا زَالَ
He did not leave off	مَا بَرِحَ	He desisted not from	مَا ٱنْفَكَّ
He relinquished not	مَا فَتِئَ	As long as	مَا دَامَ

Not	لَيْسَ
The sea was rough	كَانَ ٱلْبَحْرُ هَائِجًا
The shade was refreshing	كَانَ ٱلظِّلُّ مُنْعِشًا
The way was long	كَانَتِ ٱلطَّرِيقُ طَوِيلَةً
The sky was overcast	كَانَ ٱلْجَلَدُ مُغَيِّمًا
The sun was hot	كَانَتِ ٱلشَّمْسُ حَامِيَةً
The walk was enjoyable	كَانَ ٱلْمَشْيُ سَارًّا
Let the explanation suffice	لِيَكُنِ ٱلشَّرْحُ كَافِيًا

* These verbs are commonly used with the meaning of صَارَ

The odour was pungent	كَانَتِ ٱلرَّائِحَةُ حَادَّةً
He was a rich king	كَانَ مَلِكًا ذَا ثَرْوَةٍ
We were grieved for him	كُنَّا مَغْمُومِينَ عَلَيْهِ
He was ashamed of his poverty	كَانَ مَخْجُولًا مِنْ فَقْرِهِ
He was blamed unjustly	كَانَ مَلُومًا بِغَيْرِ حَقٍّ
He was at the point of death	كَانَ مُشْرِفًا عَلَى ٱلْمَوْتِ
He was at the last gasp	كَانَ عَلَى آخِرِ رَمَقٍ
His death was sudden	كَانَ مَوْتُهُ فُجَاءَةً
We were in the best state possible	كُنَّا عَلَى أَحْسَنِ حَالٍ
It was a bad omen	كَانَ فَأْلًا رَدِيئًا
The wound was only skin-deep	كَانَ ٱلْجُرْحُ سَطْحِيًّا فَقَطْ
It was a grievous sight	كَانَ ٱلْمَنْظَرُ مُحْزِنًا
It was a low price	كَانَ ٱلسِّعْرُ رَخِيصًا
It was a worthless excuse	كَانَ ٱلْعُذْرُ تَافِهًا
The danger was imminent	كَانَ ٱلْخَطَرُ قَرِيبَ ٱلْوُقُوعِ
The difference will be very great	يَكُونُ ٱلْفَرْقُ شَدِيدًا جِدًّا
The feast was sumptuous	كَانَتِ ٱلْوَلِيمَةُ فَاخِرَةً
The mistake was mine	كَانَ ٱلْغَلَطُ مِنِّي
The sun had well-nigh set	كَانَتِ ٱلشَّمْسُ قَدْ قَارَبَتِ ٱلْمَغِيبَ
The speaker was loudly applauded	كَانَ لِلْخَطِيبِ صَفْقَةُ ٱسْتِحْسَانٍ قَوِيَّةٌ
The defenders of the faith were heroes	كَانَ ٱلْمُدَافِعُونَ عَنِ ٱلْإِيمَانِ أَبْطَالًا
They were spectators of the scene	كَانُوا مُتَفَرِّجِينَ عَلَى ٱلْمَنْظَرِ

Cæsar was an eloquent speaker	كَانَ قَيْصَرُ خَطِيبًا بَلِيغًا
He was about to travel	كَانَ عَلَى وَشْكِ ٱلسَّفَرِ
Be content with what you have	كُونُوا مُكْتَفِينَ بِمَا عِنْدَكُمْ
Let the blame rest on me	لِيَكُنِ ٱللَّوْمُ عَلَيَّ
What will be the result of his mission ?	مَاذَا تَكُونُ نَتِيجَةُ بَعْثَتِهِ
Her dowry was a thousand pounds	فَرِيضَتُهَا (بَائِنَةٌ) كَانَتْ أَلْفَ لِيرَا
To what extent was that news true?	إِلَى أَيَّةِ دَرَجَةٍ كَانَ ذَلِكَ ٱلْخَبَرُ صَحِيحًا
He was surrounded by his soldiers	كَانَ مُحَاطًا بِعَسَاكِرِهِ
There was a glimmer of light in the chamber	كَانَ ضَوْءٌ خَفِيفٌ فِي ٱلْغُرْفَةِ
Success was by no means hopeless	لَمْ يَكُنِ ٱلنَّجَاحُ بَعِيدَ ٱلْمَرَامِ
We were glad when we heard the news	كُنَّا مَسْرُورِينَ عِنْدَ سَمَاعِنَا ٱلْخَبَرَ

كَانَ ٱلْإِنْجِيلُ مَنْقُولًا إِلَى ٱلْعَرَبِيَّةِ قَبْلَ ظُهُورِ ٱلْإِسْلَامِ

The Gospel was translated into Arabic before the coming of Islam

His answer was accompanied by a gesture of impatience	كَانَ جَوَابُهُ مُصَاحَبًا بِعَلَامَةِ ٱلضَّجَرِ
His remarks were as follows	كَانَتْ مُلَاحَظَاتُهُ كَمَا يَأْتِي
He was humble as long as he was poor	كَانَ مُتَوَاضِعًا مُدَّةَ كَوْنِهِ فَقِيرًا
The result was the discovery of lead	كَانَتِ ٱلنَّتِيجَةُ ٱكْتِشَافَ ٱلرَّصَاصِ
The necessity for such a change was evident	كَانَ ٱللُّزُومُ لِتَغْيِيرٍ كَهٰذَا ظَاهِرًا
It was an ancient Grecian custom	كَانَتْ عَادَةً يُونَانِيَّةً قَدِيمَةً
It was a bold and warlike exploit	كَانَ عَمَلًا خَطِيرًا حَرْبِيًّا
The difference between the two brothers was great	كَانَ ٱلْفَرْقُ بَيْنَ ٱلْأَخَوَيْنِ عَظِيمًا
Retreat was still possible	لَمْ يَزَلِ ٱلرُّجُوعُ مُمْكِنًا
No oath or promise was sacred	لَمْ يَكُنِ ٱلْيَمِينُ أَوِ ٱلْوَعْدُ مُحْتَرَمًا

It was impossible to pursue the companies	لَمْ تَكُنْ مُطَارَدَةُ ٱلْفِرَقِ مُمْكِنَةً
They were wondering at his marvellous adventures	كَانُوا يَتَعَجَّبُونَ مِنْ مُخَاطَرَاتِهِ ٱلْغَرِيبَةِ
They were listening eagerly	كَانُوا مُصْغِينَ بِرَغْبَةٍ
They were continually expecting it	لَمْ يَزَالُوا يَنْتَظِرُونَهُ
They were terribly bewildered by this mystery	كَانُوا مُتَحَيِّرِينَ جِدًّا مِنْ هٰذَا ٱلسِّرِّ
The expression of his countenance was terrifying	كَانَتْ هَيْئَةُ وَجْهِهِ مُخِيفَةً
He was apparently disengaged	ظَهَرَ أَنَّهُ لَمْ يَكُنْ مَشْغُولًا
The wound proved fatal	صَارَ ٱلْجُرْحُ مُمِيتًا
The origin of the quarrel was known	أَصْلُ ٱلْمُخَاصَمَةِ كَانَ مَعْرُوفًا
The country became inhabited	أَصْبَحَتِ ٱلْبِلَادُ عَامِرَةً
The prisoner was set at liberty	أَضْحَى ٱلْأَسِيرُ حُرًّا
The mystery remained unsolved	ظَلَّ ٱلسِّرُّ مَكْتُومًا
The patient became dangerously ill	أَمْسَى ٱلْمَرِيضُ مُخْطِرًا
The peace became threatened	بَاتَ ٱلسَّلَامُ مُهَدَّدًا
They did not cease watching him	لَمْ يَبْرَحُوا يُرَاقِبُونَهُ
I might have told him	كَانَ يُمْكِنُنِي أَنْ أُخْبِرَهُ
The distance is not great	لَيْسَتِ ٱلْمَسَافَةُ بَعِيدَةً
I am not ready yet	لَسْتُ مُسْتَعِدًّا بَعْدُ
I have no reason to doubt it	لَيْسَ لِي سَبَبٌ لِأَشُكَّ فِيهِ
There is no water in the well	لَيْسَ فِي ٱلْبِئْرِ مَاءٌ
I am not to blame	لَيْسَ ٱلْحَقُّ عَلَيَّ
I do not need anything	لَسْتُ مُحْتَاجًا إِلَى شَيْءٍ

I have only a little of it	لَيْسَ لِي إِلَّا قَلِيلٌ مِنْهُ
Repentance does not follow well-doing	لَيْسَ عَلَى ٱلْخَيْرِ نَدَمٌ
His condition remains the same	لَا يَزَالُ عَلَى حَالِهِ
Circumstances change	لَيْسَ يَدُومُ حَالٌ
You are not zealous in your work	لَسْتَ بِغَيُورٍ فِي عَمَلِكَ
You are yet ignorant of many things	لَا تَزَالُ جَاهِلًا لِعِدَّةِ أُمُورٍ
I have no book on the subject except this	لَيْسَ لِي فِي هٰذَا ٱلْمَوْضُوعِ سِوَى هٰذَا ٱلْكِتَابِ
They have no Patron or Intercessor besides Him	لَيْسَ لَهُمْ مِنْ دُونِهِ وَلِيٌّ وَلَا شَفِيعٌ

Words for practice :—

glad	مَسْرُورٌ	danger	خَطَرٌ أَخْطَارٌ
journey	سَفَرٌ أَسْفَارٌ	hope	رَجَاءٌ
faithful	أَمِينٌ أُمَنَاءُ	to shew	أَظْهَرَ
earring	قُرْطٌ أَقْرَاطٌ	watchman	رَقِيبٌ رُقَبَاءُ
success	نَجَاحٌ	friendship	صَدَاقَةٌ
watchtower	مَرْقَبٌ مَرَاقِبُ	gold	ذَهَبٌ
store	ذَخِيرَةٌ ذَخَائِرُ	army	جَيْشٌ جُيُوشٌ
wheat	حِنْطَةٌ	with	عِنْدَ
descent	نُزُولٌ		

Translate:—

كَانَ ٱلرَّقِيبُ وَاقِفًا عَلَى ٱلْمَرْقَبِ . كَانَ يُظْهِرُ لَنَا ٱلصَّدَاقَةَ دَائِمًا . كَانَ
فِي تِلْكَ ٱلْبَلَدِ ذَخِيرَةٌ عَظِيمَةٌ مِنَ ٱلْحِنْطَةِ . كَانَ تَحْتَ خَطَرٍ عَظِيمٍ فِي نُزُولِهِ .
كَانَ جَيْشٌ عَظِيمٌ خَارِجَ ٱلْمَدِينَةِ . هَلْ كُنْتَ مَسْرُورًا مِنْ سَفَرِكَ فِي
ٱلْبَحْرِ . ذٰلِكَ ٱلصَّدِيقُ كَانَ دَائِمًا أَمِينًا . كَانَ لَهَا فِي كُلِّ أُذُنٍ قُرْطٌ مِنْ

ذَهَبٍ . لَيْسَ لَنَا رَجَاءٌ بِالنَّجَاحِ . صَارَ كُلُّ هَذَا عَلَيَّ . لَيْسَ عِنْدِي أَكْثَرُ . كَانَ مِنَ ٱللَّازِمِ أَنْ تَفْعَلَ ذَلِكَ

Words for practice :—

annoyed	مُتَكَدِّرٌ	lawful	جَائِزٌ
wind	رِيحٌ رِيَاحٌ	to shake	حَرَّكَ
shore	شَاطِئٌ شَوَاطِئُ	to drive	سَاقَ يَسُوقُ
authority	سُلْطَانٌ	oxen	بَقَرٌ
to fast	صَامَ يَصُومُ	field	حَقْلٌ حُقُولٌ
to fortify	حَصَّنَ	gale	عَاصِفَةٌ عَوَاصِفُ
branch	غُصْنٌ أَغْصَانٌ	deed	عَمَلٌ أَعْمَالٌ
wall	سُورٌ أَسْوَارٌ	like	مِثْلُ
merchant	تَاجِرٌ تُجَّارٌ	to graze	رَعَى يَرْعَى

Translate :—The oxen were grazing in the field. The wind was shaking the branches. They were fortifying their city with a high wall. The merchant was exceedingly annoyed. The gale was driving the ships on shore. These deeds are not lawful. He has no authority. I am not rich like him. I am still fasting. We have nothing.

Words for practice :—

knife	سِكِّينٌ سَكَاكِينُ	correct	صَحِيحٌ
sharp	حَادٌّ	quiet	سَاكِتٌ
view	مَنْظَرٌ مَنَاظِرُ	sunset	غُرُوبُ ٱلشَّمْسِ
crowd	جُمْهُورٌ جَمَاهِيرُ	disappointed	مَخْذُولٌ
frozen	مُتَجَلِّدٌ	praised	مَمْدُوحٌ
satisfied	مُكْتَفٍ بِـ	cup	كَأْسٌ كُؤُوسٌ

full	مَلْآنُ	answer	جَوَابٌ أَجْوِبَةٌ
almost	تَقْرِيبًا	street	شَارِعٌ شَوَارِعُ
wood	حُرْشٌ أَحْرَاشٌ	exquisite	بَهِيٌّ

to roar زَمْجَرَ

Translate :—We were disappointed. The work was praised. The cup was almost full. We were in the woods. The knife was sharp. That view was lovely. Your answer is not correct. There was a great crowd in the street. We were very quiet. The river was frozen. The lion was roaring. The sunset was exquisite. He was satisfied with little.

APPROXIMATE VERBS.

أَفْعَالُ ٱلْمُقَارَبَةِ

كَرَبَ أَوْشَكَ كَادَ express approximation

إِخْلَوْلَقَ عَسَى express hope or desire

هَبَّ عَلِقَ إِبْتَدَأَ قَامَ أَخَذَ طَفِقَ جَعَلَ أَنْشَأَ شَرَعَ

express beginning.

Her tears almost flowed	كَادَ دَمْعُهَا يَسِيلُ
He almost fainted	كَادَ يُغْشَى عَلَيْهِ
He scarcely satisfied his hunger	لَا يَكَادُ يَسُدُّ جُوعَهُ
She almost fell to the ground	كَادَتْ تَسْقُطُ عَلَى ٱلْأَرْضِ
I can scarcely believe it	لَا أَكَادُ أُصَدِّقُهُ
He almost perished	كَادَ يَنْقَرِضُ
The work is almost complete	كَادَ ٱلْعَمَلُ يَكْمُلُ
The patient is almost well	كَادَ ٱلْمَرِيضُ أَنْ يَتَعَافَى
The orator began to speak	أَخَذَ ٱلْخَطِيبُ يَتَكَلَّمُ

I began reading to them	جَعَلْتُ أَتْلُو عَلَيْهِمْ
The professor began to teach	طَفِقَ ٱلْأُسْتَاذُ يُعَلِّمُ
The author began to compose	شَرَعَ ٱلْمُنْشِئُ يُؤَلِّفُ
May God bring relief	عَسَى ٱللّٰهُ أَنْ يَأْتِيَ بِٱلْفَرَجِ

VERBS DENOTING A MENTAL PROCESS

ظَنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا

The following express certainty :—

to find	وَجَدَ	to know	دَرَى
to learn	تَعَلَّمْ	to see	رَأَى
to find	أَلْفَى	to know	عَلِمَ

The following express doubt :—

to reckon	حَسِبَ	grant	هَبْ
to imagine	خَالَ	to think	ظَنَّ
to count	عَدَّ	to reckon	جَعَلَ
to suppose	حَجَى حَجَا	to suppose	زَعَمَ

I thought that he would go	ظَنَنْتُ أَنَّهُ يَذْهَبُ
I consider his conduct culpable	أَحْسِبُ تَصَرُّفَاتِهِ مُسْتَحِقَّةَ ٱللَّوْمِ
I informed Zaid that Amr was ill	أَنْبَأْتُ زَيْدًا عَمْرًا مَرِيضًا
We found the house empty and deserted	وَجَدْنَا ٱلْبَيْتَ خَالِيًا خَاوِيًا
He inserted this chapter as an appendix	جَعَلَ هٰذَا ٱلْفَصْلَ ذَيْلًا لِمَا سَبَقَ
I knew that he must ask me about my intention	عَلِمْتُ أَنَّهُ لَا بُدَّ أَنْ يَسْأَلَنِي عَنْ غَرَضِي
I thought that you knew about the matter	كُنْتُ أَحْسِبُ أَنَّكَ عَلِمْتَ بِٱلْأَمْرِ

PARTICLES WHICH RESEMBLE VERBS.

أَلْحُرُوفُ ٱلْمُشَبَّهَةُ بِٱلْأَفْعَالِ

These are :—

like, as if	كَأَنَّ	would that	لَيْتَ
perhaps, perchance	لَعَلَّ	certainly. surely	إِنَّ
that	أَنَّ	but, yet	لَكِنَّ

These particles take their subject in the accusative and their predicate in the nominative.

When مَا is affixed to them they cease to govern with the exception of لَيْتَ

NOTE :—إِنَّ when governed becomes أَنَّ as:—

He promised that he would come وَعَدَ أَنَّهُ يَأْتِي

إِنَّ occurs chiefly :—

(*a*) at the beginning of a sentence

(*b*) after قَالَ and its derivatives when introducing a statement.

Ignorance is a disgrace to youth	إِنَّ ٱلْجَهْلَ عَارٌ لِلْفَتَى
Goodness is a mark of nobility	إِنَّ ٱلْجُودَ عُنْوَانُ ٱلشَّرَفِ
Wealth is only a fleeting shadow	إِنَّمَا ٱلْمَالُ ظِلٌّ زَائِلٌ
Verily God is with the patient	إِنَّ ٱللّٰهَ مَعَ ٱلصَّابِرِينَ
Verily your Lord does what He will	إِنَّ رَبَّكَ فَعَّالٌ لِمَا يُرِيدُ
He is rich but he is not contented	هُوَ غَنِيٌّ لَكِنَّهُ غَيْرُ مُكْتَفٍ
The story is strange but it is true	أَلْقِصَّةُ غَرِيبَةٌ لَكِنَّهَا صَحِيحَةٌ
Oh, that youth would return	لَيْتَ ٱلشَّبَابَ يَعُودُ
Oh, that I lived in the time of the prophets	لَيْتَنِي عَاصَرْتُ ٱلْأَنْبِيَاءَ

English	Arabic
I much admire his industry	إِنِّي مُتَعَجِّبٌ مِنِ ٱجْتِهَادِهِ
Verily God is Powerful over all things	إِنَّ ٱللّٰهَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ
Verily God is Forgiving, Merciful	إِنَّ ٱللّٰهَ لَغَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ
Only the believers are brethren	إِنَّمَا ٱلْمُؤْمِنُونَ إِخْوَةٌ
Is it true that he said that?	أَصَحِيحٌ أَنَّهُ قَالَ ذَلِكَ
He says that he was not there	يَقُولُ إِنَّهُ لَمْ يَكُنْ هُنَاكَ
I hope that you will come	أَتَمَنَّى أَنَّكَ تَأْتِي
It is strange that you have not heard the news	مِنَ ٱلْغَرِيبِ أَنَّكَ مَا سَمِعْتَ ٱلْخَبَرَ
I came because you called me	جِئْتُ لِأَنَّكَ دَعَوْتَنِي
Do it because it is your duty	إِفْعَلْهُ لِأَنَّهُ وَاجِبٌ عَلَيْكَ
I tell you that I will not do it	أَقُولُ لَكَ إِنِّي لَا أَفْعَلُهُ
The surgeon said that it was contagious	قَالَ ٱلْجَرَّاحُ إِنَّهُ كَانَ مُعْدِيًا
I am pleased that you are happy	يَسُرُّنِي أَنَّكَ مَبْسُوطٌ
It grieves me that you did so	يَسُوؤُنِي أَنَّكَ فَعَلْتَ ذَلِكَ
He says that I must do it	يَقُولُ إِنِّي لَا بُدَّ مِنْ أَنْ أَفْعَلَهُ
He said that he was not there	قَالَ إِنَّهُ لَمْ يَكُنْ هُنَاكَ
I have just now come	إِنِّي ٱلْآنَ أَتَيْتُ
I do not doubt that his father is living	لَا أَشُكُّ أَنَّ أَبَاهُ حَيٌّ
The man thought that he was right	ظَنَّ ٱلرَّجُلُ أَنَّهُ مُصِيبٌ
He promised that the book should be mine	وَعَدَ أَنَّ ٱلْكِتَابَ يَكُونُ لِي
I was informed that it was he	أُخْبِرْتُ أَنَّهُ هُوَ

Words for practice :—

although	مَعَ أَنَّ	to deface	خَرَّبَ
warner	مُنْذِرٌ	to see	رَأَى يَرَى
horse	جَوَادٌ جِيَادٌ	statue	تِمْثَالٌ تَمَاثِيلُ
to be successful	أَفْلَحَ	kind	لَطِيفٌ لُطَفَاءُ
to fear	إِتَّقَى	rich	غَنِيٌّ أَغْنِيَاءُ
faithful	أَمِينٌ أُمَنَاءُ	to please	سَرَّ يَسُرُّ
standing	وُقُوفٌ	to refuse	رَفَضَ يَرْفُضُ
generous	كَرِيمٌ كِرَامٌ	to be merciful	رَحِمَ يَرْحَمُ

Translate:—

أَعْرِفُ أَنَّكَ تَأْتِي . أَخَافُ أَنَّهُمْ يُخَرِّبُونَ ٱلتِّمْثَالَ . لَيْتَنِي مُتُّ قَبْلَ هٰذَا . أُحِبُّهُ لِأَنَّهُ لَطِيفٌ . يَأْتِي لِأَنِّي أَرْسَلْتُ وَرَاءَهُ . أَبْقَى لِأَنَّكَ تُرِيدُ ذٰلِكَ . هُوَ أَمِينٌ مَعَ أَنَّهُ فَقِيرٌ . بِمَا أَنِّي عَرَفْتُهُ جَيِّدًا رَفَضْتُ طَلَبَهُ . لَيْتَهُ كَانَ هُنَاكَ لِيَرَاكَ . رَأَيْنَا أَنَّهُ لَمْ يَقْدِرْ عَلَى ٱلْوُقُوفِ . يَسُرُّنِي أَنْ أَسْمَعَ أَنَّكَ أَفْلَحْتَ . إِنَّ ٱلَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا ٱلصَّالِحَاتِ لَهُمْ أَجْرٌ . سَمِعْتُهُمْ يَقُولُونَ إِنَّهُمْ يُسَافِرُونَ غَدًا . إِنَّمَا أَنْتَ مُنْذِرٌ . إِنَّمَا ٱللّٰهُ إِلٰهٌ وَاحِدٌ . كَأَنِّي لَمْ أَرْكَبْ جَوَادًا . لَيْسَ ٱلرَّجُلُ غَنِيًّا لٰكِنَّهُ كَرِيمٌ . إِتَّقُوا لَعَلَّكُمْ تُرْحَمُونَ

Words for practice :—

wilderness	قَفْرٌ قِفَارٌ	happy	سَعِيدٌ سُعَدَاءُ
examination	إِمْتِحَانٌ ات	surety	كَفِيلٌ كُفَلَاءُ

---

to think	ظَنَّ يَظُنُّ	to escape	فَرَّ يَفِرُّ
to succeed	نَجَحَ يَنْجَحُ	to obtain	نَالَ يَنَالُ

to be wrecked إِنْكَسَرَ   to hope تَمَنَّى

pass إِجْتَازَ

Translate:—He says that he is happy. He said that he would do it. I know that he will come. We think that they have escaped. I think that you will obtain it. He said that he would send sureties. I fear that he will not succeed. I heard that the ship was wrecked. Oh, that you had come before this. Oh, that we had died in the wilderness. I hear that you are not going. I knew that you did it. He hoped that he might pass the examination.

THE ABSOLUTE NEGATIVE.

The negative particle لَا denies the existence of a thing absolutely. It governs in the same manner as إِنَّ. Both subject and predicate must be indefinite and the لَا introduce the subject.

He has no equal	لَا نَظِيرَ لَهُ
I have no business with you	لَا شَأْنَ لِي مَعَكَ
I do not doubt that I am right	لَا شَكَّ عِنْدِي أَنِّي مُحِقٌّ
There is no changer to the word of God	لَا مُبَدِّلَ لِكَلِمَاتِ ٱللهِ
There is no escape from the tongues of men	لَا مَنَاصَ مِنْ كَلَامِ ٱلنَّاسِ
There is no God but He, the Most Merciful	لَا إِلَٰهَ إِلَّا هُوَ ٱلرَّحْمَانُ ٱلرَّحِيمُ
There is no doubt that he is wrong	لَا رَيْبَ فِي أَنَّهُ مُخْطِئٌ
It will not harm you	لَا بَأْسَ عَلَيْكَ
I have no need of you	لَا حَاجَةَ لِي إِلَيْكَ
It makes no difference to me	لَا فَرْقَ عِنْدِي
There is no way of obtaining it	لَا سَبِيلَ لِلْوُصُولِ إِلَيْهِ

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

نَوَاصِبُ ٱلْفِعْلِ

The particles which govern the verb in the subjunctive mood are أَنْ لَنْ إِذَنْ and كَيْ which is preceded by لِ a particle of causation.

NOTE.— أَنْ may be omitted after لِ causation and the conjunction وَ joining a verb and a noun but it is assumed after

(*a*) the prepositions كَيْ and حَتَّى

(*b*) أَوْ meaning *lest, till.*

(*c*) لِ prefixed to the predicate of كَانَ in the negative.

(*d*) فَ expressing result or effect and وَ association.

I wish to go	أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَذْهَبَ
I hope to see you	أَرْجُو أَنْ أَرَاكَ
He was obliged to wait	إِلْتَزَمَ أَنْ يَنْتَظِرَ
Is it lawful to speak thus?	أَيَجُوزُ أَنْ يُقَالَ هٰذَا
You ought to have gone	كَانَ يَجِبُ عَلَيْكَ أَنْ تَمْضِيَ
We ought to adapt ourselves to circumstances	عَلَيْنَا أَنْ نُجَارِيَ ٱلْأَحْوَالَ
I will not oblige you to stay.	لَا أُلْزِمُكَ أَنْ تَبْقَى
The matter must be thus	لَا بُدَّ أَنْ يَكُونَ ٱلْأَمْرُ هٰكَذَا
You must send a messenger at once	عَلَيْكَ أَنْ تُرْسِلَ رَسُولاً فِي ٱلْحَالِ
We must speak of these things	يَنْبَغِي أَنْ نَتَكَلَّمَ بِهٰذِهِ ٱلْأَشْيَاءِ
It must be done according to your plan	يَجِبُ أَنْ يُعْمَلَ بِحَسَبِ أُسْلُوبِكَ
He saw fit to act thus	إِسْتَنْسَبَ أَنْ يَعْمَلَ هٰكَذَا

Ought not one of us to go?	أَمَا يَجِبُ أَنْ يَذْهَبَ أَحَدُنَا
Is it right that I should do what you wish?	أَيَحِقُّ أَنْ أَعْمَلَ مَا تُرِيدُ
He sought to augment the terms	حَاوَلَ أَنْ يَزِيدَ فِي ٱلشُّرُوطِ
I prefer not to do it	أُفَضِّلُ أَنْ لَا أَفْعَلَهُ
It is better for you to take it	خَيْرٌ لَكَ أَنْ تَأْخُذَهُ
He seeks to decry me before my friends	يَطْلُبُ أَنْ يَثْلِمَ صِيتِي عِنْدَ أَصْدِقَائِي
Your expenditure should not exceed your income	لَا يَجُوزُ أَنْ يَزِيدَ مَصْرُوفُكَ عَلَى مَدْخُولِكَ
See that you do not inform anyone of it	إِيَّاكَ أَنْ تُخْبِرَ أَحَدًا بِهِ
I wish to ask you some questions	أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَسْأَلَكَ بَعْضَ ٱلْمَسَائِلِ
It grieves me to blame you	يَسُوؤُنِي أَنْ أَلُومَكَ
He may yet amend the mistake	يُمْكِنُهُ أَنْ يُصْلِحَ ٱلْغَلَطَ بَعْدُ
Do you mean to insult me?	هَلْ قَصْدُكَ أَنْ تُهِينَنِي
Must you do this?	أَوَاجِبٌ عَلَيْكَ أَنْ تَفْعَلَ هٰذَا
It is best left alone	ٱلْأَفْضَلُ أَنْ يُتْرَكَ
I hope to allay your fears	أَرْجُو أَنْ أُهَدِّيَ رَوْعَكَ
We will try to depict the scene	نُجَرِّبُ أَنْ نَصِفَ ٱلْمَنْظَرَ
I advise you not to do it	أَنْصَحُكَ أَنْ لَا تَعْمَلَهُ
Do you venture to deny it?	هَلْ تَتَجَاسَرُ أَنْ تُنْكِرَهُ
He determined at once to excuse himself	عَزَمَ عَلَى أَنْ يَعْتَذِرَ حَالًا
We must begin the work at once	عَلَيْنَا أَنْ نَشْرَعَ فِي ٱلْعَمَلِ حَالًا
What is your request, and it shall be granted	مَا هُوَ سُؤْلُكَ فَيُعْطَى لَكَ
Wait until I return	إِنْتَظِرْ حَتَّى أَرْجِعَ

He rose to dismiss the assembly	قَامَ لِيَصْرِفَ ٱلْجَمْعَ
We must be ready then	يَجِبُ أَنْ نَكُونَ مُسْتَعِدِّينَ حِينَئِذٍ
I refuse to answer your question	أَرْفُضُ أَنْ أُجَاوِبَ سُؤَالَكَ
I do not like to acquaint him with my difficulties	لَا أُحِبُّ أَنْ أُعَرِّفَهُ بِصُعُوبَاتِي
Take heed lest you fall	إِحْتَرِزْ مِنْ أَنْ تَسْقُطَ
Repent so that God may forgive you	تُبْ لِيَغْفِرَ لَكَ ٱللّٰهُ
I came to visit you	جِئْتُ كَيْ أَزُورَكَ

Words for practice:—

law	نَامُوسٌ نَوَامِيسُ	to be necessary	يَنْبَغِي
corpse	جُثَّةٌ جُثَثٌ	to see	أَبْصَرَ
to fish	إِصْطَادَ	to distinguish	مَيَّزَ
to increase	إِزْدَادَ	to be safe	سَلِمَ يَسْلَمُ
to obey	أَطَاعَ	speck	شَبَحٌ أَشْبَاحٌ
to repent	تَابَ يَتُوبُ	horizon	أُفُقٌ آفَاقٌ
to visit	زَارَ يَزُورُ	to send	أَرْسَلَ
to honour	أَكْرَمَ	to burn	أَحْرَقَ
war	حَرْبٌ حُرُوبٌ	to be fitting	صَلَحَ يَصْلُحُ
fisherman	صَيَّادٌ ون	to determine	عَزَمَ عَلَى
to consult	تَشَاوَرَ	to buy	إِبْتَاعَ
to reconcile	أَصْلَحَ	to risk one's self	خَاطَرَ

Translate:—

أَرْسَلَ عَسَاكِرَ لِيُحْرِقُوا ٱلْبُلْدَانَ . أَرْسَلَ رُسُلاً لِيَتَشَاوَرُوا عَنِ ٱلْحَرْبِ . جَاءَ لِيُصْلِحَنَا . قَدْ ذَهَبَ ٱلصَّيَّادُ لِيَصْطَادَ فِي ٱلْبَحْرِ . بَقِيَ لِكَيْ يَرَى . عَلِمْ صَدِيقًا

فَيَزْدَادَ عِلْمًا . لَا يَصْلُحُ أَنْ تَكُونَ ٱلْأُمُورُ هَكَذَا . يَنْبَغِي لِكُلِّ وَاحِدٍ أَنْ يُطِيعَ ٱلنَّوَامِيسَ . عَزَمُوا أَنْ يُحَنِّطُوا ٱلْجُثَّةَ . إِضْرِبِ ٱللِّصَّ حَتَّى يَتُوبَ . ٱلتَّاجِرُ يَبْتَاعُ لِكَيْ يَبِيعَ . إِفْتَحْ عَيْنَيْهِ فَيُبْصِرَ . لَا أَقْدِرُ أَنْ أُمَيِّزَ ٱلشَّبَحَ فِي ٱلْأُفُقِ . لَا أَعْرِفُ دَارَكَ فَأَزُورَكَ . زُرْنِي فَأُكْرِمَكَ . لَا تُخَاطِرْ فَتَسْلَمَ

Words for practice :—

to-morrow	غَدًا	to fly	هَرَبَ يَهْرُبُ
to be lawful	جَازَ يَجُوزُ	to travel	سَافَرَ
to restore	رَدَّ يَرُدُّ	book	كِتَابٌ كُتُبٌ
to like	أَحَبَّ	to detect	مَيَّزَ
difference	فَرْقٌ فُرُوقٌ	to command	أَمَرَ يَأْمُرُ
to be compelled	إِلْتَزَمَ	to accompany	رَافَقَ

Translate :—I like to do it. We cannot detect the difference. We expect to sail to-morrow. I commanded him to go. What do you wish to do with it? He was compelled to fly. You may take the books with you. I wish to return that book. Can you accompany me? He wishes to travel to-morrow. You may go.

Words for practice :—

in vain	عَبَثًا	to interpret	فَسَّرَ
meaning	مَعْنًى مَعَانٍ	to attempt	حَاوَلَ
to oppose	قَاوَمَ	as	كَمَا
to accept	قَبِلَ يَقْبَلُ	claim	دَعْوَى دَعَاوٍ
to be able	قَدَرَ يَقْدِرُ	to be necessary	وَجَبَ يَجِبُ عَلَى
how	كَيْفَ	to understand	فَهِمَ يَفْهَمُ

thus	هٰكَذَا	to fail	خَابَ يَخِيبُ
to explain	بَيَّنَ	to be obliged	إِضْطَرَّ

Translate:—You should do as you are told. I cannot understand how he failed. He was unable to interpret the meaning for us. He tried in vain to oppose us. We were obliged to return. He cannot explain how he did it. I cannot accept your claim. Is it lawful to act thus? Shall I tell him to come? You did not say that I should come. Beat the thief until he repents.

THE CONDITIONAL AND IMPERATIVE MOODS.

جَوَازِمُ ٱلْفِعْلِ

The moods are shewn by depriving the verbs of their final vowels. The particles which cut off the final vowel of the imperfect are of two kinds :—

(I) Those which cut off the final vowel of one verb :—

لَمْ لَمَّا لِ لَا

(II) Those which cut off the final vowel of two verbs :—

إِنْ مَنْ مَا مَهْمَا أَيٌّ مَتَى أَيْنَ أَيَّانَ أَنَّى إِذْمَا حَيْثُمَا

(in poetry) كَيْفَمَا إِذَا

(I) لَمْ *not*, and لَمَّا *not yet*, are always used before the imperfect and change the tense into the past, as :—

He did not sit	لَمْ يَجْلِسْ
The guest arose and had not eaten	قَامَ ٱلضَّيْفُ وَلَمَّا يَأْكُلْ

لِ *let* (of command when preceded by فَ or وَ loses its vowel, as :—

Let the man go	لِيَذْهَبِ ٱلرَّجُلُ
Then let your boy arise	فَلْيَقُمْ غُلَامُكَ

لَا *not* (of prohibition) as :—Do not come لَا تَأْتِ

The judgment of the court was reserved	حُكْمُ ٱلْمَجْلِسِ لَمْ يُعْلَنْ
We were never in bondage to any man	لَمْ نُسْتَعْبَدْ لِأَحَدٍ قَطُّ
Giddiness did not again seize him	لَمْ يَعُدْ يَأْخُذُهُ ٱلدُّوَارُ
We had not space enough	لَمْ يَكُنْ لَنَا ٱتِّسَاعٌ كَافٍ
I have not yet been informed of his arrival	لَمْ أُخْبَرْ بَعْدُ عَنْ وُصُولِهِ
He plucked the fruit while it was not yet ripe	قَطَفَ ٱلثَّمَرَ وَلَمَّا يَنْضَجْ
Let him go instead of me	لِيَذْهَبْ عِوَضًا عَنِّي
Let him read the news to us	لِيَتْلُ عَلَيْنَا ٱلْأَخْبَارَ
Let the fire be kindled at sunset	لِتُوقَدِ ٱلنَّارُ عِنْدَ ٱلْمَغْرِبِ
Let thought precede enterprise and council all work	لِيَسْبِقِ ٱلْفِكْرُ ٱلْمَشْرُوعَ وَٱلْمَشُورَةُ كُلَّ عَمَلٍ
Do not forget favours	لَا تَنْسَ ٱلْمَعْرُوفَ
Let no one say this	لَا يَقُلْ أَحَدٌ هٰكَذَا
Do not refuse it for my sake	لَا تَرْفُضْهُ إِكْرَامًا لِي
Do not distract me	لَا تَقْطَعْ مَجْرَى أَفْكَارِي
Do not delay your going	لَا تَتَأَخَّرْ فِي ذَهَابِكَ

Words for practice :—

revenge	إِنْتِقَامٌ ات	to forget	نَسِيَ يَنْسَى
awhile	قَلِيلًا	to distort	عَوَّجَ
to be delayed	تَأَخَّرَ	anyone	أَحَدٌ
to delay	أَخَّرَ	happy	سَعِيدٌ ونَ
thus	هٰكَذَا	to sleep	نَامَ يَنَامُ
volume	مُجَلَّدٌ ات	to cross	إِجْتَازَ

Translate:—He did not find anyone. The king was not happy. We did not sleep well. He did not speak thus. He did not wish to enter. Do not forget the volume. Do not love sleep. Do not seek revenge. Do not delay. Do not distort your face. Do not be hindered. Let them tell it. Let us cross the river. Let us go and see. Let us wait here a while.

II. Particles which cut off the final vowel of two vowels.

whosoever مَنْ whatsoever مَا مَهْمَا whosoever, whatsoever, whichsoever أَيٌّ أَيَّمَا wherever أَيْنَ أَيْنَمَا حَيْثُمَا whenever أَيَّانَ إِذْمَا whenever مَتَى مَتَى مَا if (in poetry) إِذَا however كَيْفَ كَيْفَمَا

whenever, wherever أَنَّى

These particles do not govern except the verbs of both clauses or the first only are in the imperfect tense. When the first verb is in the preterite and the second in the imperfect, the latter may or may not be apocopated.

(*a*) إِنْ may be understood after a command or in a conditional sentence when the فَ or وَ are not introduced, as:—

Lend it to me and I will repay you أَقْرِضْنِي أُوفِكَ

(*b*) All these particles come first in the sentence and are indeclinable with the exception of أَيٌّ

If you are patient you will be victorious إِنْ تَصْبِرْ تَظْفَرْ

Whosoever seeks finds مَنْ يَطْلُبْ يَجِدْ

Whosoever cometh to me I will not cast out مَنْ يُقْبِلْ إِلَيَّ لَا أُخْرِجْهُ خَارِجًا

Whosoever doeth evil shall be recompensed for it مَنْ يَعْمَلْ سُوءًا يُجْزَ بِهِ

Whatsoever good you do God knoweth it مَا تَفْعَلُوا مِنْ خَيْرٍ يَعْلَمْهُ ٱللهُ

Whatsoever you do in this world you will meet with in the next مَا تَفْعَلُوهُ فِي ٱلدُّنْيَا تَلْقَوْهُ فِي ٱلْآخِرَةِ

Whatsoever you bring us we will not believe مَهْمَا تَأْتِنَا بِهِ لَا نُؤْمِنْ

By whatsoever you call upon Him He has the most excellent names	أَيًّا مَا تَدْعُو فَلَهُ ٱلْأَسْمَاءُ ٱلْحُسْنَى
Whenever you meet us you die with fear	مَتَى تَلْقَنَا تَمُتْ رُعْبًا
Whenever you come to us you will meet with good	أَيَّانَ تَأْتِنَا تَلْقَ خَيْرًا
Wherever you are death will overtake you	أَيْنَمَا تَكُونُوا يُدْرِكْكُمُ ٱلْمَوْتُ
Wherever you are God sees you	حَيْثُمَا كُنْتُمْ يَنْظُرْكُمُ ٱللهُ
Wherever you go God will assign to you success	حَيْثُمَا تَذْهَبْ يُقَدِّرْ لَكَ ٱللهُ نَجَاحًا
However you may be I will be	أَنَّى تَكُنْ أَكُنْ
However you come to me I will receive you	كَيْفَمَا تَأْتِنِي أَقْبَلْكَ

THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES SHEW THE DIFFERENT WAYS IN WHICH CONDITION MAY BE EXPRESSED.

AFTER إِنْ

If it rains I shall be surprised	إِنْ أَمْطَرَتْ أَتَعَجَّبْ
If they should try they would succeed	إِنْ جَرَّبُوا نَجَحُوا
If he should come I will let you know	إِنْ أَتَى أُخْبِرْكَ
If I see him I will tell him	إِنْ كُنْتُ أَرَاهُ أُخْبِرْهُ
If he sees him he will be angry	إِنْ كَانَ يَرَاهُ يَغْضَبُ
If you should meet me you will know me	إِنِ ٱلْتَقَيْتَ بِي تَعْرِفْنِي
If he is content I am	إِنْ كَانَ هُوَ مُكْتَفِيًا فَأَنَا كَذَلِكَ
If he comes we shall be astonished	إِنْ أَتَى يَأْخُذْنَا ٱلْعَجَبُ
If he said this to you it must be right	إِنْ قَالَ لَكَ هَذَا فَلَا بُدَّ أَنْ يَكُونَ صَحِيحًا
Unless the weather is fine I will not come	إِنْ كَانَ ٱلطَّقْسُ غَيْرَ جَيِّدٍ لَا آتِي
If you give me the receipt I will pay you the sum	إِنْ أَعْطَيْتَنِي ٱلْوَصْلَ أَدْفَعْ لَكَ ٱلْمَبْلَغَ

I do not know whether this is true or false	لَا أَعْرِفُ إِنْ كَانَ هٰذَا صَحِيحًا أَوْ كَذِبًا
If we should fail we must try again	إِنْ كُنَّا نَخِيبُ فَعَلَيْنَا أَنْ نُجَرِّبَ مَرَّةً أُخْرَى
He will go if I tell him	يَذْهَبُ إِنْ كُنْتُ أَقُولُ لَهُ
If I come you will know	إِنْ أَتَيْتُ تَعْلَمُ
If I go I will call you	إِنْ ذَهَبْتُ أَدْعُوكَ
I may go if you will let me	يُمْكِنُنِي أَنْ أَذْهَبَ إِنْ سَمَحْتَ لِي
Tell me if you understand	قُلْ لِي إِنْ كُنْتَ فَاهِمًا
If I do not hear from you I will come	آتِي إِنْ كُنْتُ لَا أَسْمَعُ مِنْكَ

Words for practice :—

Athens أَثِينَا Rome رُومِيَةُ kindly بِلُطْفٍ again مَرَّةً أُخْرَى
to meet with إِجْتَمَعَ بِـ to drive away طَرَدَ يَطْرُدُ to receive
قَبِلَ يَقْبَلُ to inform أَعْلَمَ to be quiet سَكَتَ يَسْكُتُ

Translate:—If you come I shall be glad. If I come I will speak to him. If he wishes he can do it. If we go they will receive us kindly. I will not come unless you send for me. Send for me if you need me. If he is driven from Rome he will go to Athens. If he should meet with me he will know me. If you should do this I will not be quiet. If it should happen again you will let me know.

PARTICLES OF NEGATION.

أَدَوَاتُ ٱلنَّفْيِ

The particles of negation are :—

مَا and إِنْ (rarely used) *no, not,* are used for the negation in the past and present tenses, as :—

No one came	مَا جَاءَ أَحَدٌ
No one is sleeping	مَا أَحَدٌ نَائِمًا

لَمْ and لَمَّا *not*, are only used with the imperfect, as:—

God, no one has ever seen Him	أَللّٰهُ لَمْ يَرَهُ أَحَدٌ

لَنْ *never* (for ever) is used with the imperfect only and with the signification of the future, as:—

You will never see him	لَنْ تَرَاهُ

لَا *no, not,* serves for the three tenses, as:—

I do not see you except when reading	لَا أَرَاكَ إِلَّا قَارِئًا

لَيْسَ (a verb) *not, no.*

The army is not ready	لَيْسَ ٱلْجَيْشُ مُسْتَعِدًّا
He has not failed who has hope	مَا خَابَ مَنْ لَهُ أَمَلٌ
Not every opportunity is taken	مَا كُلُّ فُرْصَةٍ تُنَالُ
I do not know what has happened to him	لَا أَعْرِفُ مَا صَارَ لَهُ
This is not my opinion	مَا هٰذَا بِرَأْيِي
A man does not obtain all that he hopes for	مَا كُلُّ مَا يَتَمَنَّى ٱلْمَرْءُ يُدْرِكُهُ
It is good for nothing	لَا يَصْلُحُ لِشَيْءٍ
No one is free from envy	مَا خَلَا جَسَدٌ مِنْ حَسَدٍ
I do not know that which is unseen	لَا أَعْلَمُ ٱلْغَيْبَ
He is not sincere in his promise	لَا يَصْدُقُ فِي وَعْدِهِ
You have no other Patron or Advocate	مَا لَكُمْ مِنْ دُونِهِ وَلِيٌّ وَلَا شَفِيعٌ
They did not kill Him nor crucify Him but it was made to appear to them *that it was so*	مَا قَتَلُوهُ وَمَا صَلَبُوهُ وَلٰكِنْ شُبِّهَ لَهُمْ

THE CONDITIONAL PARTICLES.

أَمَّا ، لَوْ ، لَوْلَا ، لَوْمَا ، لَمَّا

أَمَّا *but, but as for,* takes فَ as its correlative and is followed by a noun or pronoun, as :—

But as for me, I shall die — أَمَّا أَنَا فَأَمُوتُ

لَوْ *if,* denotes condition with reference to past time and signifies the non-existence of the result because of the non-existence of the condition.

لَوْلَا and لَوْمَا *were it not for, had it not been for,* denote the impossibility of one thing because of the existence of another.

لَمَّا *when,* is only used with the preterite.

If you had come I should have been glad — لَوْ أَتَيْتَ لَفَرِحْتُ

If I had been able I would have gone — لَوْ قَدِرْتُ لَذَهَبْتُ

If I had been able I would have done it — لَوْ قَدِرْتُ لَفَعَلْتُهُ

If he had been here he would not have allowed it — لَوْ كَانَ هُنَا لَمَا سَمَحَ بِهِ

If I had had time I would have gone — لَوْ كَانَ لِي وَقْتٌ لَذَهَبْتُ

If I had been in your place I would have gone — لَوْ كُنْتُ فِي مَكَانِكَ لَذَهَبْتُ

If he had informed us previously we should not have gone — لَوْ أَخْبَرَنَا قَبْلًا لَمَا كُنَّا ذَهَبْنَا

If he had been here now he would have spoken — لَوْ كَانَ هُوَ الْآنَ هٰهُنَا لَقَالَ

Had the cause been known the wonder would have ceased — لَوْ عُرِفَ السَّبَبُ لَبَطَلَ الْعَجَبُ

Had God willed He would have gathered them all into the right path

لَوْ شَاءَ اللّٰهُ لَجَمَعَهُمْ عَلَى الْهُدَى

Had your Lord willed He would have made of men one nation

لَوْ شَاءَ رَبُّكَ لَجَعَلَ ٱلنَّاسَ أُمَّةً وَاحِدَةً

Had it been from any other but God they would have found in it great disagreement

لَوْ كَانَ مِنْ عِنْدِ غَيْرِ ٱللهِ لَوَجَدُوا فِيهِ ٱخْتِلَافًا كَثِيرًا

Had I known that you were here I would not have come — لَوْ عَرَفْتُ أَنَّكَ هُنَا لَمَا أَتَيْتُ

If it had not been for you I would have died — لَوْلَاكَ لَقُضِيَ عَلَيَّ

If it had not been for the favour and mercy of God towards you, you would have been among those who go astray

لَوْلَا فَضْلُ ٱللهِ عَلَيْكُمْ وَرَحْمَتُهُ لَكُنْتُمْ مِنَ ٱلْخَاسِرِينَ

VERBS OF WONDER.

The verbs of wonder are on two measures:—

مَا أَفْعَلَ and أَفْعِلْ بِهِ

How sweet it is	مَا أَحْلَاهُ
How beautiful is the prospect	مَا أَظْرَفَ ٱلْمَنْظَرَ
How conceited he is	مَا أَعْجَبَهُ بِرَأْيِهِ
How faulty is your opinion	مَا أَخْطَأَ رَأْيَكَ
How great is the height	مَا أَعْظَمَ ٱلْعُلُوَّ
How fearful are Thy works, O Lord	مَا أَهْيَبَ أَعْمَالَكَ يَا رَبُّ
How delightful is the morning	مَا أَبْهَجَ هٰذَا ٱلصَّبَاحَ
How little satisfied you	مَا أَقَلَّ مَا قَنِعْتَ بِهِ
How well he sees and hears	أَبْصِرْ بِهِ وَأَسْمِعْ

THE PARTICLE قَدْ WITH THE PRETERITE EXPRESSES CERTAINTY ; WITH THE IMPERFECT, DOUBT.

The day has declined	قَدْ مَالَ ٱلنَّهَارُ
The snow has melted	قَدْ ذَابَ ٱلثَّلْجُ
The heat has come	قَدْ جَاءَ ٱلْحَرُّ
The army has returned	قَدْ رَجَعَ ٱلْجَيْشُ
The winter has gone	قَدْ مَضَى ٱلشِّتَاءُ
He has now become an orphan	قَدْ صَارَ ٱلْآنَ يَتِيمًا
The time for sleep has come	قَدْ دَنَا وَقْتُ ٱلْمَنَامِ
It sometimes happens	قَدْ يَكُونُ هٰذَا
The miser is sometimes generous	قَدْ يَجُودُ ٱلْبَخِيلُ
Man is sometimes obliged to employ stratagem	قَدْ يَضْطَرُّ ٱلْإِنْسَانُ إِلَى ٱلْحِيلَةِ

PART THIRD

SENTENCES TO ILLUSTRATE THE USE OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

مِنْ

He went out from the place	خَرَجَ مِنَ ٱلْمَحَلِّ
He drank some of the wine	شَرِبَ مِنَ ٱلْخَمْرِ
He took some of the money	أَخَذَ مِنَ ٱلدَّرَاهِمِ
Why are we blamed by them ?	لِمَاذَا نُلَامُ مِنْهُمْ
I have lost the letter	ضَاعَتْ مِنِّي ٱلرِّسَالَةُ
He alighted from his horse	نَزَلَ مِنْ عَنْ فَرَسِهِ
He did this of his own accord	عَمِلَ هٰذَا مِنْ خَاطِرِهِ
He fears the hunters	يَخَافُ مِنَ ٱلْقَنَّاصِينَ
It fell from his hand	سَقَطَ مِنْ يَدِهِ
He fled for fear of death	هَرَبَ خَوْفًا مِنَ ٱلْمَوْتِ
He died of hunger	مَاتَ مِنَ ٱلْجُوعِ
The sea is greater than the land	أَلْبَحْرُ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ ٱلْبَرِّ
Draw nigh to me	إِقْتَرِبْ مِنِّي
No one came	مَا جَاءَ مِنْ رَجُلٍ
I knew the truth from falsehood	عَرَفْتُ ٱلْحَقَّ مِنَ ٱلْبَاطِلِ
This is what happened to me	هٰذَا مَا كَانَ مِنْ أَمْرِي
By any means	بِوَجْهٍ مِنَ ٱلْوُجُوهِ

إِلَى

He returned to his place	عَادَ إِلَى مَكَانِهِ
I wrote to him	كَتَبْتُ إِلَيْهِ

He ascended the mountain	صَعِدَ إِلَى ٱلْجَبَلِ
Add this to that	إِجْمَعْ هٰذَا إِلَى ذَاكَ
We reached the bridge	وَصَلْنَا إِلَى ٱلْجِسْرِ
He went to the country	ذَهَبَ إِلَى ٱلْبَرِّ
He ate till he was satisfied	أَكَلَ إِلَى ٱلشِّبَعِ
Come unto me	تَعَالَوْا إِلَيَّ
Tie the horse to the tree	أُرْبُطِ ٱلْحِصَانَ إِلَى ٱلشَّجَرَةِ
He sat at the table writing	جَلَسَ إِلَى ٱلطَّاوِلَةِ يَكْتُبُ
Truth is dearer to me than gain	أَلصِّدْقُ أَحَبُّ إِلَيَّ مِنَ ٱلرِّبْحِ
These flowers are mine	هٰذِهِ ٱلزُّهُورُ لِي
Living is pleasant to him	يَلَذُّ لَهُ ٱلْعَيْشُ

عَنْ

He heard of his brother	سَمِعَ عَنْ أَخِيهِ
He arose from the table	نَهَضَ عَنِ ٱلْمَائِدَةِ
I will pay for you	أُوفِي عَنْكَ
They treat of peace	يَتَكَلَّمُونَ عَنِ ٱلسَّلَامِ
We spoke about a recent invention	تَكَلَّمْنَا عَنِ ٱخْتِرَاعٍ جَدِيدٍ
Take it from off the table	خُذْهُ عَنِ ٱلطَّاوِلَةِ
Your argument failed	ذَهَبَتْ عَنْكَ ٱلْحُجَّةُ
He threw himself from the wall	رَمَى نَفْسَهُ عَنِ ٱلسُّورِ
He neglected the pursuit of it	غَفَلَ عَنِ ٱلْإِسْرَاعِ إِلَيْهِ
He sat on his right	جَلَسَ عَنْ يَمِينِهِ

Get you gone — إِلَيْكَ عَنِّي

May God reward you for me — جَزَاكَ ٱللهُ عَنِّي

He died leaving a large estate — مَاتَ عَنْ تَرِكَةٍ كَبِيرَةٍ

Tell me what you have seen — أَخْبِرْنِي عَمَّا (عَنْ مَا) رَأَيْتَ

God is exalted above the world — تَعَالَى ٱللهُ عَنِ ٱلْعَالَمِينَ

They were killed to the last man — قُتِلُوا عَنْ آخِرِهِمْ

He did it unintentionally — عَمِلَهُ عَنْ غَيْرِ قَصْدٍ

May God be gracious unto him — رَضِيَ ٱللهُ عَنْهُ

Pay for me — إِدْفَعْ عَنِّي

He did it with a willing mind — فَعَلَهُ عَنْ نَفْسٍ رَاضِيَةٍ

I can do without it — أَنَا فِي غِنًى عَنْهُ

عَلَى

At Thy word I will let down the net — عَلَى كَلِمَتِكَ أُلْقِي ٱلشَّبَكَةَ

He sat at the table — جَلَسَ عَلَى ٱلْمَائِدَةِ

Profound silence fell upon the assembly — غَلَبَ عَلَى ٱلْمَحْفَلِ سُكُوتٌ عَظِيمٌ

Lamentation was made for him — أُقِيمَتْ عَلَيْهِ ٱلْمَنَاحَةُ

Repeat your remarks to me — أَعِدْ عَلَيَّ كَلَامَكَ

He floated upon the water — عَامَ عَلَى ٱلْمَاءِ

He obtained a reward for his bravery — نَالَ مُكَافَأَةً عَلَى شَجَاعَتِهِ

I cannot tolerate your rudeness — لَا طَاقَةَ لِي عَلَى فَظَاظَتِكَ

We came on shore — نَزَلْنَا عَلَى ٱلشَّاطِئِ

We walked along the bank — مَشَيْنَا عَلَى ٱلْحَافَةِ

He descended with caution	نَزَلَ عَلَى حَذَرٍ
He did it in spite of his old-age	فَعَلَهُ عَلَى كِبَرِ سِنِّهِ
He walked heedlessly	سَارَ عَلَى غَيْرِ هُدًى
I speak briefly	أَقُولُ عَلَى سَبِيلِ ٱلِاخْتِصَارِ
He went away quietly	مَضَى عَلَى ٱلسَّكِينَةِ
Why do you weep?	عَلَامَ تَبْكِي
Your flattery will not deceive me	تَمَلُّقُكَ لَا يَجُوزُ عَلَيَّ
Nevertheless I will forgive you on this occasion	عَلَى أَنِّي أُسَامِحُكَ هٰذِهِ ٱلْمَرَّةَ
It is hard for me to leave my country	صَعْبٌ عَلَيَّ أَنْ أُفَارِقَ وَطَنِي
Accept my advice for what it is worth	إِقْبَلْ نَصِيحَتِي عَلَى عِلَّاتِهَا

فِي

Three by five	ثَلَاثَةٌ فِي خَمْسَةٍ
He frowned upon him	عَبَسَ فِي وَجْهِهِ
He blamed him for that	لَامَهُ فِي ذٰلِكَ
He whispered in his ear	هَمَسَ فِي أُذُنِهِ
He died of heart-disease	مَاتَ فِي مَرَضِ ٱلْقَلْبِ
He went through the house	دَارَ فِي ٱلْبَيْتِ
As the proverb says	كَقَوْلِهِمْ فِي ٱلْمَثَلِ
It has nothing to do with it	لَيْسَ فِي شَيْءٍ مِنْ ذٰلِكَ
He threw the book in his face	رَمَى بِٱلْكِتَابِ فِي وَجْهِهِ
He died fighting for the faith	مَاتَ فِي سَبِيلِ ٱلْجِهَادِ
He will return in three days	يَرْجِعُ فِي ثَلَاثَةِ أَيَّامٍ

The speech impressed them	كَلاَمُهُ دَخَلَ فِي عُقُولِهِمْ
The ring will not go on my finger	أَلْخَاتَمُ لاَ يَدْخُلُ فِي إِصْبَعِي

بِ

The court was crowded with them	غَصَّ بِهِمُ ٱلْمَجْلِسُ
He nodded his head	أَطْرَقَ بِرَأْسِهِ
I wrote the letter with my own hand	كَتَبْتُ ٱلْمَكْتُوبَ بِيَدِي
Overcome evil with good	إِغْلِبِ ٱلشَّرَّ بِٱلْخَيْرِ
This for that	هٰذَا بِذَاكَ
The river runs very swiftly	يَجْرِي ٱلنَّهْرُ بِسُرْعَةٍ زَائِدَةٍ
He denied all knowledge of the affair	أَنْكَرَ كُلَّ مَعْرِفَةٍ بِٱلْقَضِيَّةِ
All the people went	ذَهَبَ ٱلْقَوْمُ بِأَسْرِهِمْ
An eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth	عَيْنٌ بِعَيْنٍ وَسِنٌّ بِسِنٍّ
The prince himself came	جَاءَ ٱلْأَمِيرُ بِنَفْسِهِ

مُذْ and مُنْذُ

I have not spoken to him since I saw you	مَا كَلَّمْتُهُ مُذْ رَأَيْتُكَ
I saw him two days ago	رَأَيْتُهُ مُنْذُ يَوْمَيْنِ
He was an orphan from his youth	كَانَ يَتِيمًا مُنْذُ شَبَابِهِ
He has since left the country	قَدْ تَرَكَ ٱلْبِلَادَ مُنْذُ ذٰلِكَ

حَتَّى

I watched until dawn	سَهِرْتُ حَتَّى ٱلْفَجْرِ
I ate the fish to its head	أَكَلْتُ ٱلسَّمَكَةَ حَتَّى رَأْسِهَا
Fight until death comes	جَاهِدُوا حَتَّى ٱلْمَوْتِ

مَعَ

He sat with him	جَلَسَ مَعَهُ
He walked with me	سَارَ مَعِي
He did me a favour	عَمِلَ مَعِي مَعْرُوفاً
We met together in Gaza	إِجْتَمَعْنَا مَعاً فِي غَزَّةَ
He did not give the poor man anything although he was rich	لَمْ يُعْطِ ٱلْفَقِيرَ شَيْئاً مَعَ أَنَّهُ غَنِيٌّ
I reached Jaffa at the call of sunset	وَصَلْتُ يَافَا مَعَ أَذَانِ ٱلْمَغْرِبِ
He cannot play with me	لاَ يُمْكِنُهُ أَنْ يَلْعَبَ مَعِي

VERBS WHICH TAKE SPECIAL PREPOSITIONS TO GIVE THEM THEIR PARTICULAR MEANING.

SENTENCES IN WHICH THE VERBS TAKE SPECIAL PREPOSITIONS.

As :—

to grant	مَنَّ عَلَى	to doubt	شَكَّ فِي
to trust in	وَثِقَ بِـ	to be able	قَدَرَ عَلَى
to determine	عَزَمَ عَلَى	to assail	سَطَا عَلَى

Who doubts the truth of this?	مَنْ يَشُكُّ فِي صِحَّةِ هٰذَا
He could not offer help	لَمْ يَقْدِرْ عَلَى تَقْدِيمِ مُسَاعَدَةٍ
The enemy was assailing our position	كَانَ ٱلْعَدُوُّ يَسْطُو عَلَى مَرْكَزِنَا
His decease arose from natural causes	مَوْتُهُ صَدَرَ عَنْ أَسْبَابٍ طَبِيعِيَّةٍ
They desist from the attack	يَكُفُّونَ عَنِ ٱلْمُهَاجَمَةِ
We will look into this matter	نَنْظُرُ فِي هٰذَا ٱلْأَمْرِ

He allowed me to remain	سَمَحَ لِي أَنْ أَبْقَى
He was well-known and therefore trusted	كَانَ مَعْرُوفًا جَيِّدًا وَلِذَلِكَ وُثِقَ بِهِ
The speech impressed him	وَقَعَ ٱلْكَلَامُ فِي نَفْسِهِ
They could not stand before their enemies	لَمْ يَقْدِرُوا عَلَى ٱلْوُقُوفِ أَمَامَ أَعْدَائِهِمْ
Your departure distresses me	يَعِزُّ عَلَيَّ فِرَاقُكَ
I will defray the expense	أَقُومُ بِالنَّفَقَةِ
He kept his promise	قَامَ بِوَعْدِهِ
He could not prevail against him	لَمْ يَقْدِرْ عَلَيْهِ
Who will show me the way ?	مَنْ يَدُلُّنِي عَلَى ٱلطَّرِيقِ
Upon what have you determined ?	عَلَى أَيِّ شَيْءٍ عَزَمْتَ
I cannot divulge it	لَا أَقْدِرُ أَنْ أَبُوحَ بِهِ
The army sustained a heavy loss	حَلَّ بِالْجُنْدِ خَسَارَةٌ جَسِيمَةٌ
He followed his own plan	عَمِلَ بِرَأْيِ نَفْسِهِ
They granted him permission	مَنُّوا عَلَيْهِ بِالْإِذْنِ
He told me the tale	قَصَّ عَلَيَّ ٱلْقِصَّةَ
The work is not free from difficulty	لَا يَخْلُو ٱلْعَمَلُ مِنْ صُعُوبَةٍ
The door-keeper refused him admission	مَنَعَهُ ٱلْبَوَّابُ مِنَ ٱلدُّخُولِ
It did not occur to my mind before	لَمْ يَخْطُرْ فِي بَالِي قَبْلًا
Add to your faith virtue	زِيدُوا عَلَى إِيمَانِكُمُ ٱلْفَضِيلَةَ
The traveller strayed from the path	ضَلَّ ٱلسَّائِحُ عَنِ ٱلطَّرِيقِ
You can trust to his honour	تَقْدِرُ أَنْ تَثِقَ بِشَرَفِهِ
The judge determined to acquit the prisoner	عَزَمَ ٱلْقَاضِي عَلَى تَبْرِئَةِ ٱلْمَسْجُونِ

The general determined to besiege the city	عَزَمَ ٱلْجِنرَالُ عَلَى أَنْ يُحَاصِرَ ٱلْمَدِينَةَ
A man appeared to me in the way	عَرَضَ لِي رَجُلٌ فِي أَثْنَاءِ ٱلطَّرِيقِ
We must attack the town to-morrow	عَلَيْنَا أَنْ نَهْجُمَ عَلَى ٱلْبَلَدِ غَدًا
He does not take the advice of anyone	لَا يَأْخُذُ بِرَأْيِ أَحَدٍ
The envoy has brought a message from the king	قَدْ أَتَى ٱلرَّسُولُ بِرِسَالَةٍ مِنَ ٱلْمَلِكِ
He went his own way	مَضَى فِي طَرِيقِهِ
He despaired of victory	يَئِسَ مِنَ ٱلْغَلَبَةِ
He devoted himself to the pursuit of knowledge	وَقَفَ فِي سَبِيلِ ٱلْعِلْمِ أَيَّامَهُ
I was astonished at it	عَجِبْتُ مِنْهُ
He threw himself down	رَمَى بِنَفْسِهِ
He quoted from the Koran	نَقَلَ عَنِ ٱلْمُصْحَفِ
The king was alone with his great men	خَلَا ٱلْمَلِكُ بِكُبَرَائِهِ
We finished the meal	فَرَغْنَا مِنَ ٱلطَّعَامِ
He sought to go	هَمَّ بِٱلذَّهَابِ
We were pleased with the sight	سُرِرْنَا بِٱلْمَنْظَرِ
Fighting is enjoined upon you and it is hateful to you	كُتِبَ عَلَيْكُمُ ٱلْقِتَالُ وَهُوَ كُرْهٌ لَكُمْ
He longed for his people and home	حَنَّ إِلَى أَهْلِهِ وَوَطَنِهِ
A low estate is decreed for them wherever they are found	ضُرِبَتْ عَلَيْهِمُ ٱلذِّلَّةُ أَيْنَمَا ثُقِفُوا
He was not permitted to speak	لَمْ يَأْذَنْ لَهُ أَنْ يَتَكَلَّمَ
His brother was jealous of him	غَارَ مِنْهُ أَخُوهُ
He denied the favour	كَفَرَ بِٱلنِّعْمَةِ
The old mariner told us an ancient legend	قَصَّ عَلَيْنَا ٱلْبَحْرِيُّ ٱلشَّيْخُ خُرَافَةً قَدِيمَةً

Inasmuch as this was the reason he determined to travel — بِمَا أَنَّ هٰذَا كَانَ ٱلسَّبَبَ عَزَمَ عَلَى ٱلسَّفَرِ

Man does not lack a friend who praises him or an enemy who reviles him

لَا يَخْلُو ٱلْإِنْسَانُ مِنْ وَدُودٍ يَمْدَحُ أَوْ عَدُوٍّ يَقْدَحُ

The men rose against so wicked a law as this — قَامَ ٱلنَّاسُ عَلَى نِظَامٍ رَدِيءٍ كَهٰذَا

We passed by him — مَرَرْنَا بِهِ

I fear for you — أَخَافُ عَلَيْكَ

He was prepared for action — حَسَرَ عَنْ سَاعِدِ ٱلْجِدِّ

The judge failed to elicit an answer from the defendant

عَجَزَ ٱلْقَاضِي عَنْ أَخْذِ جَوَابٍ مِنَ ٱلْمُدَّعَى عَلَيْهِ

I must get that book — يَجِبُ أَنْ أَحْصُلَ عَلَى ذٰلِكَ ٱلْكِتَابِ

It is right that he should do it — يَلِيقُ بِهِ أَنْ يَفْعَلَهُ

I ought to go — يَجِبُ عَلَيَّ أَنْ أَذْهَبَ

Of what does he complain — مِنْ أَيِّ شَيْءٍ يَشْكُو

Blessed is he who is not offended in Me — طُوبَى لِمَنْ لَا يَعْثُرُ فِيَّ

Thank God for His mercy — اُشْكُرِ ٱللهَ عَلَى رَحْمَتِهِ

Praise the Lord for His goodness — اِحْمَدِ ٱلرَّبَّ عَلَى جُودَتِهِ

He was anxious about him — غَارَ عَلَيْهِ

Take care that you do not pass this place — اِحْذَرْ مِنْ أَنْ تَعْبُرَ هٰذَا ٱلْمَكَانَ

They determined to avenge themselves of the injury — عَزَمُوا عَلَى ٱلِانْتِقَامِ مِنْ أَجْلِ ٱلْإِسَاءَةِ

They desisted from the attempt and returned to their fort

عَدَلُوا عَنِ ٱلْمَشْرُوعِ وَرَجَعُوا إِلَى حِصْنِهِمْ

I demand you to prove your assertion — أَطْلُبُ إِلَيْكَ أَنْ تُثْبِتَ قَوْلَكَ

He accepted all the conditions which were imposed upon him — رَضِيَ بِكُلِّ مَا وُضِعَ عَلَيْهِ مِنَ ٱلشُّرُوطِ

It is only a portion of what was promised — هُوَ قِسْمٌ فَقَطْ مِمَّا وُعِدَ بِهِ

I cannot accede to your unreasonable demands	لَا أَقْدِرُ أَنْ أَقْبَلَ بِمَطَالِبِكَ ٱلْغَيْرِ ٱلْمَعْقُولَةِ
Can you attest the facts	هَلْ تَقْدِرُ أَنْ تَشْهَدَ لِلْحَقَائِقِ
The witnesses are here to attest the will	أَلشُّهُودُ هُنَا لِيَشْهَدُوا لِلْوَصِيَّةِ
The judge condemns him for the crime	أَلْقَاضِي يَحْكُمُ عَلَيْهِ لِأَجْلِ ٱلذَّنْبِ
We will investigate that matter shortly	نَبْحَثُ فِي تِلْكَ ٱلْمَسْأَلَةِ عَنْ قَرِيبٍ
We have preferred some of the prophets to others	قَدْ فَضَّلْنَا بَعْضَ ٱلنَّبِيِّينَ عَلَى بَعْضٍ
The soldiers were searching for plunder	كَانَ ٱلْعَسْكَرُ يُفَتِّشُونَ عَلَى ٱلْغَنِيمَةِ
It cannot be expressed	لَا يُمْكِنُ أَنْ يُعَبَّرَ عَنْهُ
Did I not warn you of this?	أَمَا حَذَّرْتُكَ مِنْ هٰذَا
Are you seeking for anyone?	هَلْ تُفَتِّشُ عَلَى أَحَدٍ
They determined to do it	عَوَّلُوا عَلَى فِعْلِهِ
He exposes himself to danger	يُعَرِّضُ نَفْسَهُ لِلْخَطَرِ
Urge the believers to fight	حَرِّضِ ٱلْمُؤْمِنِينَ عَلَى ٱلْقِتَالِ
The blood makes atonement for the soul	أَلدَّمُ يُكَفِّرُ عَنِ ٱلنَّفْسِ
Neither reproof nor punishment affects him	لَا يُؤَثِّرُ فِيهِ تَوْبِيخٌ وَلَا قِصَاصٌ
I commit them to your care	أُسَلِّمُهُمْ لِعُهْدَتِكَ
I will inform him of your proposal	أُعَرِّفُهُ بِمَعْرُوضِكَ
Recommend him to your uncle	وَصِّ عَمَّكَ بِهِ
Salute one another	سَلِّمُوا بَعْضُكُمْ عَلَى بَعْضٍ
I prefer death to disgrace	أُفَضِّلُ ٱلْمَوْتَ عَلَى ٱلْخِزْيِ
He urged him to advance	هُوَ حَرَّضَهُ عَلَى ٱلتَّقَدُّمِ
They greeted him with applause	رَحَّبُوا بِهِ بِتَصْفِيقِ ٱلْأَيَادِي

I cannot altogether confide in him	لَا أَقْدِرُ أَنْ أُعَوِّلَ عَلَيْهِ تَمَامًا
I cannot recompense you for your kindness	لَا أَقْدِرُ أَنْ أُكَافِئَكَ عَلَى مَعْرُوفِكَ
He does not heed correction	هُوَ لَا يُبَالِي بِٱلتَّوْبِيخِ
He was hindered from going	أُعِيقَ عَنِ ٱلذَّهَابِ
I will not conceal anything from you	لَا أُخْفِي شَيْئًا عَنْكَ
He did not tell me of his danger	لَمْ يُخْبِرْنِي عَنْ خَطَرِهِ
I beckoned to him to attract his attention	أَوْمَأْتُ إِلَيْهِ لِأَجْذُبَ ٱنْتِبَاهَهُ إِلَيَّ
He expressed his thoughts clearly	أَفْصَحَ عَنْ أَفْكَارِهِ
Do you dare to defend this man?	هَلْ تَجَاسَرُ أَنْ تُدَافِعَ عَنْ هٰذَا ٱلْإِنْسَانِ
Persevere in the work if you wish to succeed	دَاوِمْ عَلَى ٱلْعَمَلِ إِنْ أَرَدْتَ أَنْ تَنْجَحَ
Do you accede to my request?	أَتُوَافِقُ عَلَى مَطْلَبِي
He ran a risk	خَاطَرَ بِنَفْسِهِ
He kept the secret	حَافَظَ عَلَى ٱلسِّرِّ
The enemy tried to attack our forces	حَاوَلَ ٱلْعَدُوُّ أَنْ يَهْجُمَ عَلَى جُيُوشِنَا
I forgave him his mistake	سَامَحْتُهُ بِخَطَإِهِ
They defend their city against us	يُدَافِعُونَ عَنْ مَدِينَتِهِمْ ضِدَّنَا
He was persevering in study	كَانَ مُوَاظِبًا عَلَى ٱلدَّرْسِ
He was intent upon the work	أَكَبَّ عَلَى ٱلْعَمَلِ بِٱجْتِهَادٍ
Take the picture of the king and look attentively at it	خُذْ صُورَةَ ٱلْمَلِكِ وَأَمْعِنْ بِهَا ٱلنَّظَرَ
We believe in what was sent down to us	نُؤْمِنُ بِمَا أُنْزِلَ عَلَيْنَا
They bound him with chains	أَوْثَقُوهُ بِسَلَاسِلَ
The forces of the enemy surrounded him	أَحَاطَتْ بِهِ جُيُوشُ ٱلْأَعْدَاءِ

He informs us in it of his determination	يُنبِئُنَا فِيهَا بِعَزْمِهِ
You will injure yourself	تُضِرُّ بِنَفْسِكَ
The battle ended in the victory of the Japanese	قَدْ أَسْفَرَتِ ٱلْوَاقِعَةُ عَنْ نُصْرَةِ ٱلْيَابَانِ
I will inform you of my intention	أُطْلِعُكَ عَلَى قَصْدِي
Thus I bequeath my fortune	هَكَذَا أُوصِي بِأَمْوَالِي
He disapproved of his action	أَنْكَرَ عَلَيْهِ فَعْلَتَهُ
They surrounded the fortress on all sides	أَحْدَقُوا بِٱلْحِصْنِ مِنْ كُلِّ جَانِبٍ
I am unable to grant your request	لَا أَقْدِرُ أَنْ أَرْضَى بِطَلَبِكَ
He failed to observe the conditions	أَخَلَّ بِٱلشُّرُوطِ
He was conceited	أُعْجِبَ بِنَفْسِهِ
He was placed under arrest	أُلْقِيَ ٱلْقَبْضُ عَلَيْهِ
He persisted in his opinion	أَصَرَّ عَلَى رَأْيِهِ
He propounded a difficult question to me	أَلْقَى عَلَيَّ سُؤَالًا صَعْبًا
He told me that the prisoner had fled	أَخْبَرَنِي بِأَنَّ ٱلْمَسْجُونَ قَدْ هَرَبَ
Spare the conquered enemy	أَشْفِقْ عَلَى ٱلْعَدُوِّ ٱلْمَغْلُوبِ
He was advised to consult a physician	أُشِيرَ عَلَيْهِ أَنْ يَسْتَشِيرَ ٱلطَّبِيبَ
Does he allege that the story is true?	هَلْ يُصَرِّحُ بِأَنَّ ٱلْقِصَّةَ صَحِيحَةٌ
Did he do you an injury?	هَلْ أَسَاءَ إِلَيْكَ بِشَيْءٍ
He turned from him and wept	تَحَوَّلَ عَنْهُ وَبَكَى
Imitate the prudent	تَمَثَّلُوا بِالْأَلِبَّاءِ
He married his cousin	تَزَوَّجَ بِابْنَةِ عَمِّهِ
It was difficult for him to do	تَعَذَّرَ عَلَيْهِ فِعْلُهُ

He leans upon his staff	يَتَوَكَّأُ عَلَى عَصَاهُ
I escaped from him	تَخَلَّصْتُ مِنْهُ
We marvelled at the heroes retreating	نَتَعَجَّبُ مِنَ ٱلْأَبْطَالِ كَيْفَ تَقَهْقَرُوا
Three things are consequent on this speech	يَتَرَتَّبُ عَلَى هٰذَا ٱلْكَلَامِ ثَلَاثَةُ أُمُورٍ
His hope depended upon it	تَعَلَّقَ أَمَلُهُ بِهِ
Do not oppose me in what I am doing	لَا تَتَعَرَّضْ لِي فِيمَا أَعْمَلُهُ
Fear overcame him	تَغَلَّبَ عَلَيْهِ ٱلْخَوْفُ
He was able to fulfil his promise	تَمَكَّنَ مِنَ ٱلْوَفَاءِ بِوَعْدِهِ
Exercise patience in this matter	تَمَرَّنْ عَلَى ٱلصَّبْرِ فِي هٰذِهِ ٱلْمَسْأَلَةِ
Our return depends upon circumstances	رُجُوعُنَا يَتَوَقَّفُ عَلَى ٱلظُّرُوفِ
You should equip yourself for the journey	عَلَيْكَ أَنْ تَتَأَهَّبَ لِلسَّفَرِ
He practised shooting	تَمَرَّنَ عَلَى إِطْلَاقِ ٱلرَّصَاصِ
He seized the ropes of the boat	تَمَسَّكَ بِحِبَالِ ٱلْقَارِبِ
The matter does not depend upon us	لَا يَتَوَقَّفُ عَلَيْنَا ٱلْأَمْرُ
I think that you will not oppose my proposition	أَظُنُّ أَنَّكَ لَا تَتَعَرَّضُ لِمَعْرُوضِي
You should not interfere in that which does not concern you	لَا يَجُوزُ لَكَ أَنْ تَتَدَاخَلَ فِيمَا لَا يَخُصُّكَ
Men kept coming to us	تَوَارَدَ ٱلنَّاسُ إِلَيْنَا
He was gathered to his people	إِنْضَمَّ إِلَى قَوْمِهِ
The eagle swooped down upon him	إِنْقَضَّ عَلَيْهِ ٱلنَّسْرُ
He stood alone in his opinion	إِنْفَرَدَ بِرَأْيِهِ
Do not let vain thoughts engross you	لَا تَنْهَمِكْ فِي تَصَوُّرَاتٍ بَاطِلَةٍ
W shall be obliged to use severe measures	نَكُونُ مُضْطَرِّينَ إِلَى ٱسْتِعْمَالِ وَسَائِطَ صَارِمَةٍ

She decided to confide in the faith of her mistress	عَزَمَتْ أَنْ تَتَّكِلَ عَلَى أَمَانَةِ سَيِّدَتِهَا
We must make the best conditions we can	عَلَيْنَا أَنْ نَتَّفِقَ عَلَى أَحْسَنِ شُرُوطٍ نَقْدِرُ عَلَيْهَا
He surpassed his contemporaries	إِمْتَازَ عَلَى مُعَاصِرِيهِ
He alighted from his horse	تَرَجَّلَ عَنْ جَوَادِهِ
They take lessons with their professor	يَتَلَقَّوْنَ ٱلدُّرُوسَ عَنْ أُسْتَاذِهِمْ
Be patient with all	تَأَنَّوْا عَلَى ٱلْجَمِيعِ
It is difficult of accomplishment	يَتَعَسَّرُ ٱلسُّلُوكُ فِيهَا
Will you do me a favour?	هَلْ تَتَكَرَّمُ عَلَيَّ
He was distinguished above his contemporaries	تَمَيَّزَ عَنْ مُعَاصِرِيهِ
Kindly help me	تَكَرَّمْ بِمُسَاعَدَتِي
Guard against such mistakes	تَحَفَّظْ مِنْ أَغْلَاطٍ كَهٰذِهِ
They gaze upon the pictures of the greatest men	يَتَفَرَّجُونَ عَلَى صُوَرِ أَعَاظِمِ ٱلرِّجَالِ
Have patience with me	تَمَهَّلْ عَلَيَّ
They conversed together of all His wonders	تَحَادَثُوا بِكُلِّ عَجَائِبِهِ
What man dares I dare	مَا يَتَجَاسَرُ عَلَيْهِ أَحَدٌ فَأَنَا أَتَجَاسَرُ
I renounce my rights to the estate	أَتَنَازَلُ عَنْ حُقُوقِي فِي ٱلْأَمْلَاكِ
He ceased work	إِنْقَطَعَ عَنْ أَشْغَالِهِ
He came down the hill	إِنْحَدَرَ عَنِ ٱلتَّلَّةِ
The Greeks and Romans were famous for architecture	إِشْتَهَرَ ٱلْيُونَانِيُّونَ وَٱلرُّومَانِيُّونَ بِعِلْمِ ٱلْبِنَاءِ
The partners agreed to cancel the agreement	إِتَّفَقَ ٱلشُّرَكَاءُ عَلَى إِبْطَالِ ٱلشَّرْطِ
The surface of the earth consists of land and water	وَجْهُ ٱلْأَرْضِ يَشْتَمِلُ عَلَى يَابِسَةٍ وَمِيَاهٍ
Hunger distressed him	إِشْتَدَّ عَلَيْهِ ٱلْجُوعُ

The soldier reflected on his misfortune إِفْتَكَرَ ٱلْجُنْدِيُّ فِي سُوءِ حَظِّهِ

They relied upon your help إِعْتَمَدُوا عَلَى مُسَاعَدَتِكُمْ

The thief confessed his crime أَللِّصُّ ٱعْتَرَفَ بِذَنْبِهِ

Of what is he accused? بِمَاذَا أُتُّهِمَ

The roads need repair أَلطُّرُقُ تَحْتَاجُ إِلَى تَصْلِيحٍ

The ear is not satisfied with hearing أَلْأُذُنُ لَا تَمْتَلِئُ مِنَ ٱلسَّمْعِ

He quoted from the writings of the poets إِقْتَبَسَ مِنْ كِتَابَاتِ ٱلشُّعَرَاءِ

He abstained from his evil-doing إِرْتَدَعَ عَنْ شُرُورِهِ

The matter was obscure to him إِشْتَبَهَ عَلَيْهِ ٱلْأَمْرُ

I beg this favour of you أَلْتَمِسُ مِنْكَ هٰذَا ٱلْمَعْرُوفَ

Eventually we discovered the secret أَخِيرًا ٱطَّلَعْنَا عَلَى ٱلسِّرِّ

He stuck to his opinion إِلْتَصَقَ بِرَأْيِهِ

We long for home نَشْتَاقُ إِلَى وَطَنِنَا

He apostatized إِرْتَدَّ عَنِ ٱلْإِيمَانِ

No one relies upon his word لَا يَتَّكِلُ أَحَدٌ عَلَى كَلَامِهِ

Rely only upon your own efforts إِعْتَمِدُوا عَلَى جِدِّكُمْ فَقَطْ

Look unto me and be saved إِلْتَفِتُوا إِلَيَّ وَٱخْلُصُوا

He took the reins of government in his hands إِسْتَوْلَى عَلَى أَزِمَّةِ ٱلْمُلْكِ

He was engrossed in his work إِسْتَغْرَقَ فِي عَمَلِهِ

He continues his speech يَسْتَمِرُّ فِي كَلَامِهِ

He rests from his labours يَسْتَرِيحُ مِنْ أَشْغَالِهِ

CLASSIFICATION OF THE WEAK VERBS.

ARRANGEMENT TO SHEW THE VOWEL OF THE MIDDLE LETTER IN THE IMPERFECT.

DOUBLED VERBS. اَلْمُضَاعَفُ

When the second of the two like letters is silent incorporation ceases, as مَدَدْنَا

The following take ـُ on the middle letter of the imperfect:—

to wet	بَلَّ	to blow	هَبَّ	to scratch	حَكَّ
to sprinkle	رَشَّ	to sharpen, enact	سَنَّ	to cease	كَفَّ
to stretch	مَدَّ	to drag	جَرَّ	to suck	مَصَّ
to wrap up	لَفَّ	to restore	رَدَّ	to crush	رَضَّ
to amass	لَمَّ	to seek to do	هَمَّ	to write	خَطَّ
to repair to	أَمَّ	to please	سَرَّ	to split	شَقَّ
to deceive	غَشَّ	to touch	جَسَّ	to shear	جَزَّ
to exert oneself	جَدَّ	to loose	فَكَّ	to knock	دَقَّ
to poison	سَمَّ	to cut	قَصَّ	to count	عَدَّ
to lower	حَطَّ	to pour	صَبَّ	to pass by	مَرَّ
to jump	نَطَّ	to doubt	شَكَّ	to go on a pilgrimage	حَجَّ
to blame	ذَمَّ	to diffuse	بَثَّ	to exhort	حَثَّ
		to toil	كَدَّ		

The following take ـَ :—

to bite	عَضّ	to smell	شَمّ	to love	وَدّ
to insist	لَجّ	to touch	مَسّ	to suck	مَصّ

to be wearied of مَلّ

The following take ـِ :—

to tinkle	رَنّ	to smile	بَشّ	to make a noise	ضَجّ
to be thin, compassionate	رَقّ	to smell	شَمّ	to ring	طَنّ
to grow up	شَبّ	to shake	هَزّ	to be weary	كَلّ
to have compassion on	حَنّ عَلَى	to be cheerful	هَشّ	to tighten	شَدّ
to become dry	جَفّ	to be fulfilled	تَمّ	to groan	أَنّ
to be light	خَفّ	to flee	فَرّ	to be sound	صَحّ
to err	ضَلّ	to kneel	خَرّ	to loosen	حَلّ
to slip	زَلّ	to be transparent	شَفّ	to whine	هَرّ

HAMZATED VERBS. أَلْمَهْمُوز

The only change to be observed is that hamzeh silent when preceded by hamzeh vowelled is changed into the letter homogeneous to the vowel, as :—

أَأْمَنَ آمَنَ أُؤْمِنُ أُومِنُ

The following take ـُ on the middle letter of the imperfect :—

to take	أَخَذَ	to cough	أَحّ	to hope	أَمَلَ
to eat	أَكَلَ	to command	أَمَرَ	to go	أَمّ

The following take ـَ :—

to accustom oneself to	أَلِفَ	to disdain	أَنِفَ	to be zealous	دَأَبَ
to regret	أَسِفَ	to become stagnant	أَسِنَ	to be sad	كَئِبَ
to despair	أَيِسَ	to be sociable	أَنِسَ	to despair	يَئِسَ
to suffer	أَلِمَ	to be wakeful	أَرِقَ	to see	رَأَى
to be safe	أَمِنَ	to permit	أَذِنَ	to thirst	ظَمِئَ
to roar	زَأَرَ	to create	بَرَأَ	to read	قَرَأَ
to feel aversion for	سَئِمَ	to become rusty	صَدِئَ	to conceal	خَبَأَ
to ask	سَأَلَ	to be healed	بَرِئَ	to be quiet	هَدَأَ
		to fill	مَلَأَ		

The following take ـِ :—

to look for shelter	أَوَى	to take captive	أَسَرَ	to groan	أَنَّ

VERBS BEGINNING WITH و AND ي. أَلْمِثَال

Verbs beginning with و having ـِ on the middle letter of the imperfect, drop the و in the imperfect (active), imperative and masdar, as :— وَصَلَ يَصِلُ صِلَةً

Verbs which take ـِ on the middle letter of the imperfect, and therefore drop the و are :—

to stand	وَقَفَ	to trust	وَثِقَ	to describe	وَصَفَ
to be necessary	وَجَبَ	to come	وَرَدَ	to weigh	وَزَنَ
to brand	وَسَمَ	to give birth	وَلَدَ	to confide in	وَكَلَ

to be weak	وَهَنَ	to exhort	وَعَظَ	to join, reach	وَصَلَ
to inherit	وَرِثَ	to promise	وَعَدَ	to find	وَجَدَ
to load	وَسَقَ	to flash	وَمَضَ	to leap	وَثَبَ
to burn	وَقَدَ	to be grave	وَقَرَ		

Verbs which drop the و although they have ـَـ on the middle letter of the imperfect :—

to leave	وَدَعَ	to place	وَضَعَ	to fall	وَقَعَ
grant	وَهَبَ	to lap	وَلَغَ	to contain	وَسِعَ

Verbs which take ـِـ on the middle letter of the imperfect.

to despair	يَئِسَ	to swell	وَرِمَ	to be awake	يَقِظَ
to dry up	يَبِسَ				

Verbs which take ـُـ on the middle letter of the imperfect:—

to be humble	وَضُعَ	to be easy	يَسُرَ	to become an orphan	يَتُمَ
to be wide	وَسُعَ	to be pious	وَرُعَ	to be plentiful	وَفُرَ
to be meek	وَدُعَ	to be brief	وَجُزَ		

THE HOLLOW VERB. اَلْأَجْوَفُ

When the nominative pronouns تُ ، نَ ، نَا are annexed to the hollow verb its weak letter is dropped, as :— قُلْنَا

The same change occurs in the third, sixth, seventh, and ninth derived formations, as :—

أَقَمْنَا إِنْقَدْنَا إِجْتَزْنَا إِسْتَقَمْنَا

In the masdars of the third and ninth derived formations a final ة is added, as :— إِقَامَةٌ إِسْتِقَامَةٌ

If the ع in the imperfect of the three-lettered verb has ـُ the ف in the preterite after dropping the weak letter takes ـُ as :— قَامَ يَقُومُ قُمْتُ

If the ع have ـَ or ـِ the ف must have ـِ

خَافَ يَخَافُ خِفْتُ بَاعَ يَبِيعُ بِعْتُ

In the following the weak letter is changed into و in the imperfect :—

to be	كَانَ	to rise	قَامَ	to say	قَالَ
to desire	رَامَ	to be lawful	جَازَ	to repent	تَابَ
to float	عَامَ	to go round	دَارَ	to pass away	زَالَ
to fast	صَامَ	to hunger	جَاعَ	to be stirred	ثَارَ
to nourish	عَالَ	to compass	طَافَ	to melt	ذَابَ
to lead	قَادَ	to boil over	فَارَ	to be successful	فَازَ
to miss	فَاتَ	to weave	حَاكَ	to die	مَاتَ
to excel, be generous	جَادَ	to travel	سَاحَ	to wave	مَاجَ
to feed	قَاتَ	to be unjust	جَارَ	to be easy	هَانَ
to be current	رَاجَ	to diffuse	فَاحَ	to drive	سَاقَ
to depart	رَاحَ	to be giddy	دَاخَ	to dive	غَاصَ
to be treacherous	خَانَ	to travel	جَالَ	to wade	خَاضَ
to taste	ذَاقَ	to bellow	خَارَ	to be clear	رَاقَ
to be head	سَادَ	to tread	دَاسَ	to mould	صَاغَ

to return	عَادَ	to preserve	صَانَ	to surpass	فَاقَ
to err	زَاغَ	to be long	طَالَ	to lament	نَاحَ
		to continue	دَامَ		

In the following the ا is changed into ي in the imperfect:—

to be good	طَابَ	to be lost	ضَاعَ	to be absent	غَابَ
to sell	بَاعَ	to overflow	فَاضَ	to fail	خَابَ
to live	عَاشَ	to fly	طَارَ	to walk	سَارَ
to sew	خَاطَ	to be in season	حَانَ	to become old	شَابَ
to be fitting	لَاقَ	to travel	سَاحَ	to become	صَارَ
to flow	سَالَ	to be gentle	لَانَ	to pass the night	بَاتَ
to shout	صَاحَ	to incline	مَالَ	to be spread abroad	شَاعَ
to find fault with	عَابَ	to adorn	زَانَ	to appear	بَانَ
to become extinct	بَادَ	to wander	تَاهَ	to disfigure	شَانَ
to be excited	هَاجَ	to become old	شَاخَ	to measure	كَالَ
to hunt	صَادَ	to increase	زَادَ	to build up, plaster	شَادَ

In the following the ا is retained in the imperfect:—

to obtain	نَالَ	to fear	هَابَ	to sleep	نَامَ
to fear	خَافَ	to be on the point of	كَادَ	to be perplexed	حَارَ

THE DEFECTIVE VERB. اَلنَّاقِصُ

When the و plural pronoun and the ي singular feminine pronoun of the second person are annexed to a defective verb,

its weak letter is dropped. If the middle letter has ـَ it remains, and if ـُ or ـِ it has to agree with the و or ي respectively, as:—

يَخْشَوُونَ يَخْشَوْنَ تَغْزُوِينَ تَغْزِينَ تَرْمِيِينَ تَرْمُونَ

غَزَوُوا غَزَوْا رَضِيُوا رَضُوا إِبْقَيُوا إِبْقَوْا

Verbs ending in ا change the ا into و in the imperfect:—

to be hard	قَسَا	to call	دَعَا	to raid	غَزَا
to be vacant	خَلَا	to grow	نَمَا	to approach	دَنَا
to go forth early	غَدَا	to be high	عَلَا	to pardon	عَفَا
to kneel	جَثَا	to escape	نَجَا	to be clear	صَفَا
to compassionate	حَنَا	to anchor	رَسَا	to clothe	كَسَا
to be sweet	حَلَا	to hope	رَجَا	to run	عَدَا

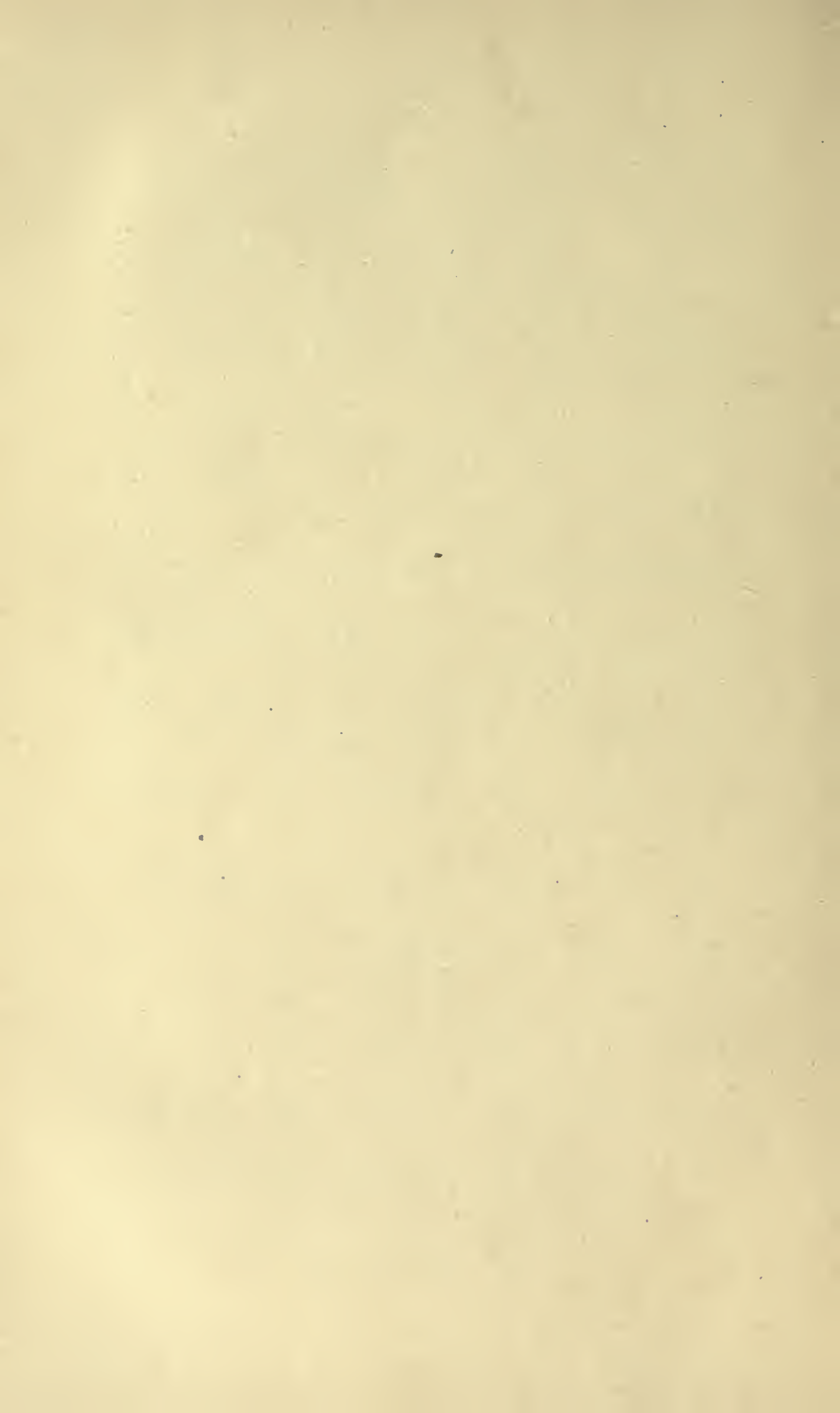
Verbs whose middle letter takes ـَ in the imperfect:—

to cover	غَشِيَ	to be pleased	رَضِيَ	to fear	خَشِيَ
to be rich	غَنِيَ	to enjoy the favour of	حَظِيَ	to perish	فَنِيَ
to become hot	حَمِيَ	to be miserable	شَقِيَ	to meet, find	لَقِيَ
to be liberal	سَخِيَ	to remain	بَقِيَ	to be ashamed	خَزِيَ
to become blind	عَمِيَ	to forget	نَسِيَ	to live	حَيِيَ
to be sick	عَيِيَ	to love	هَوِيَ	to be strong	قَوِيَ
		to quench thirst	رَوِيَ		

Verbs whose middle letter takes ـِـ in the imperfect:—

to pluck	جَنَى	to give to drink	سَقَى	to take prisoner	سَبَى
to collect taxes	جَبَى	to weep	بَكَى	to suffice	كَفَى
to travel at night	سَرَى	to fry	قَلَى	to desire	بَغَى
to throw	رَمَى	to boil	غَلَى	to mean	عَنَى
to build	بَنَى	to heal	شَفَى	to judge	قَضَى
to fold	ثَنَى	to flow, run	جَرَى	to know	دَرَى
to recompense	جَزَى	to report	رَوَى	to contain	حَوَى
to fold	طَوَى	to howl	عَوَى	to twist	لَوَى
to seek shelter	أَوَى	to iron, cauterize	كَوَى	to roast	شَوَى
		to purpose	نَوَى		





INDEX.


AMERICAN
1822
1834
BEIRUT
PRESS
SYRIA

